PRO PATRIA
A LATIN STORY FOR BEGINNERS

THEODORE SCHENK LITT
Maurer E. Deutsch.
July 30, 1911.
Moran E. Deutsch.
July 30, 1911.
MONUMENTVM IN MEMORIAM
FREDERICI HVGONIS
SHERSTON ROBERTS
AD TVGELAM FACTVM
PRO PATRIA: A LATIN STORY
FOR BEGINNERS, BEING A
SEQUEL TO 'ORA MARITIMA,'
WITH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES
BY E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, D.LITT.,
OXON., PROFESSOR IN THE UNI-
VERSITY OF BIRMINGHAM

Qui procul hinc, the legend's writ,
The frontier grave is far away,
Qui ante diem perit;
Sed miles, sed pro patria.

HENRY NEWBOLT;
'Clifton Chapel.'

LONDON
SWAN SONNENSCHEIN & CO., LIM\D
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN CO
1907
First Issue, 1903; Reprinted 1907.

Gift of 'Prendergast' Parker

To My
Angelinos

Butler & Tanner The Selwood Printing Works Frome and London
Preface

The idea on which my *Ora Maritima* and its sequel, the present volume, are based, is that an interesting narrative may be a better vehicle for teaching the elements of a language than a collection of isolated grammar sentences, provided that the interesting narrative is so constructed and graduated as to constitute in itself a basis for the systematic study of grammar. My object, then, has been to write a book which should not only appeal to the minds of pupils through the interest of its subject matter, but also form as complete a grammatical ladder as the driest of dry exercise books. *Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci.*

In carrying out this programme for *Pro Patria* I have adhered to the ideal which I set up for myself in *Ora Maritima*, that the Latin text should be ‘classical in form, but modern in setting.’ The scene is laid in a country house on the coast of Kent, and afterwards at Winchester, and the time of the action is the period from September 1899 to June 1900. I have thus been enabled to give unity of action to the two parts into which the narrative falls. The first part is taken up with a study of Roman Britain in connexion with a visit to Richborough Castle; the second with the Boer War, the first news of which arrives soon after the conclusion of the summer holidays. It is my hope that my young readers may find in the first part a more vivid picture of the condition of Britain under the Romans than is contained in most school histories of England; and in the treatment of the Boer War I have endeavoured to bring out its dramatic interest and heroic incidents. Party politics are, of course, kept out of view.
PREFACE

The amount of grammar covered by Pro Patria ¹ may seem to some teachers disproportionately small; and, no doubt, if it had been my object simply to teach grammar, I might have made the text shorter. But a long experience in teaching Latin to pupils of very various ages and stages has made me sceptical as to the value of a skin-deep knowledge of grammar. It is one thing to learn declensions and conjugations out of a grammar or from grammar sentences, and quite another thing to know them as they appear in actual life. How many boys and girls leave school without having acquired any real mastery even of the simplest kind of Latin or the power of making any practical use of the grammatical facts which they have so laboriously learned! That is the sort of educational result on which the present outcry against Latin in schools is largely based. The great mistake seems to be that the elementary stages of learning are turned into a purely grammatical discipline and that the grammar is hurried over before the study of the language proper and the literature are commenced. Declensions and conjugations learned in this fashion find no real lodgment in the mind; or, at best, the outcome of the tedious process is that the pupil ‘holds the parts in his hand,’ but misses ‘the spirit that binds them together.’ ² It is against this abstract method of teaching that Ora Maritima and Pro Patria are a protest. It has been my object to write for the use of the beginner a ‘real book,’ which shall have a literary as well as a linguistic interest of its own, and from which the pupil shall gain something more than a bowing acquaintance with Nouns and Verbs. I have, therefore, not shunned repetitions; and I have deliberately aimed at providing a certain

¹ The point from which Pro Patria starts is that which is reached in Ora Maritima, and the pupil is carried on to the end of the regular accidence.

² Dann hat er die Teile in seiner Hand;
   Fehlt, leider! nur das geistige Band.
   —Goethe, Faust,
mass of easy Latin from which he may acquire the habit of reading, as distinct from construing, Latin. If, at the end of two years’ work, the pupil has acquired this, together with the fundamentals of Latin grammar, he will have spent his time to some purpose, and will be in a position to begin the study of a classical author and of the more difficult parts of the grammar with some hope of a happy issue. Or if, on the other hand, he drops the study of Latin at this point, he will still have acquired a working knowledge of the language up to a certain level. This is an aspect of the matter on which I desire to lay some stress. There are many schools, or modern sides of schools, in which only a limited amount of time can be devoted to Latin; and the problem is how can that time be spent so as to produce the most profitable result. It is my hope that the present book may contribute to the solution of this problem.

It is not my intention that an equal amount of time and attention should be bestowed on all the sections of the text. Some of them (marked with a †) are unnecessary from the purely grammatical point of view; they exist for the purpose of carrying on the story and providing material for rapid reading; and where time presses they may be translated by the teacher to the class. The exercises and conversations are intended to be used as the needs of particular classes may demand. For translation into Latin alternative passages are given, from which the teacher may select what best suits his purpose. Some of them may be worked on paper, some viva voce, some may be omitted altogether. I have thought it better to give too much rather than too little.

One of my young friends who was learning from this book made a criticism of it which will probably pass through the minds of other readers. "The Romans," he said, "knew nothing of South Africa." Exactly; but it is possible that the best

---

1 It is intended that Ora Maritima and Pro Patria shall occupy one year each.
way to learn an ancient language is to study it as written at the present day in connexion with a subject matter which is familiar or easily intelligible to the modern reader. This is, of course, only a means to an end; but there are many ends which are better attained indirectly than directly.

I have ventured on some novelties in the realm of grammar teaching, among which the use of the term 'Injunctive,' side by side with 'Subjunctive,' calls for a word of explanation. The new term expresses the fundamental idea of what is commonly called the 'Subjunctive Mood'; it is the mood of desire, and should be introduced to the pupil in the first instance in connexion with sentences like 'God save the King.' For such meanings the term Subjunctive is quite inappropriate, and a fruitful source of error; it comes in, however, so soon as the mood appears in a subordinate clause. And if the pupil subsequently abandons the term Injunctive altogether, it will nevertheless have served its purpose in introducing him to a right conception of the mood—a conception which will serve him in good stead afterwards.

My best thanks are due to Dr. J. E. Sandys, Public Orator in the University of Cambridge, for permission to quote some verses which originally appeared in his Latin speeches to the University, and for his great kindness in reading my proof sheets of the text and making many valuable suggestions.

E. A. S.

The University, Birmingham,
July, 1903.

Note to the New Issue.—No changes have been made in the present issue, with the exception of the correction of a few misprints and the addition of a Summary of Grammatical Rules (pp. 182 ff.)

1 See Preparations, §§ 48, 49, 50.
2 These are acknowledged in their places in the "Preparations."
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>Mensis September.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 1.</td>
<td>Adjectives of 3rd Declension in —, <em>is, e</em></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>Britannia Liberata.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2.</td>
<td><em>is, ea, id</em>—Singular Number</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>Cunobelinus.</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 3, 4.</td>
<td><em>ei, eae, ea</em>—Plural Number</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>Caractacus.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5.</td>
<td><em>eius and suus, a, um</em> contrasted</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 6.</td>
<td><em>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</em></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Boadicea.</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 7–9.</td>
<td><em>ille, illa, illud.</em></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>Britannia Pacata.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 10–13.</td>
<td><em>hic, haec, hoc</em></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.</td>
<td>Pax Romana.</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 14.</td>
<td>Comparatives of Adjectives</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 15.</td>
<td>Superlatives of Adjectives</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 16, 17.</td>
<td>Passive Voice of 1st Conjugation; Present, Past Imperfect and Future tenses</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII.</td>
<td>Castellum Rutupinum.</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 18.</td>
<td>Questions and Exclamations</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 19.</td>
<td><em>qui, quae, quod and quis, quid</em>—in questions</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 20, 21.</td>
<td><em>qui, quae, quod</em> in clauses which are not questions</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 22.</td>
<td>2nd Conjugation; Present, Past Imperf. and Future, Active</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 23.</td>
<td>4th Declension and Passives of 2nd Conjugation</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX.</td>
<td>Angli et Saxones.</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 24–26.</td>
<td>2nd Conjugation; Perfect Stem, Active</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 27.</td>
<td>Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive—how expressed</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 28–30.</td>
<td>5th Declension.</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X.</td>
<td>Res Africanae.</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 31.</td>
<td>Recapitulation of Verbs</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 32.</td>
<td>3rd Conjunction; Present, Active and Passive</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
COMMENTARII DE VITA MEA AD DUBRAS
ANNO MDCCCXCIX.

I. Mensis September.

[Adjectives of Third Declension in —, ìs, è.]

PRO PATRIA

II. Britannia Liberata.

[18; ea, id.—Singular Number.]

2. Gaius Iulius Caesar, postquam copias suas pedestres et equestres ex Britannia in Galliam transportavit, nihil amplius de Britannis cogitavit. Ab incolis litoris meridiani victoriam reportaverat, ad flumen Tamesam penetraverat, oppidum Cassivellauni expugnaverat, magnum numerum captivorum in servitutem venumdederat, tributum Britannis imperaverat. Id ei satis erat. Sed Britanniam non reversa debellaverat, nec victoria eius magna fuerat. Tacitus eum non magnam victoriam reportavisse in capite tertio decimo Vitae Agricolae affirmat. "Divus Iulius" inquit "Britanniam Romanis monstravit, sed non debellavit."

Britanni autem viri animo forti erant. Tributum et servitutem non tolerabant. Et Romanis post tempora C. Iulii Caesaris longa oblivio erat Britanniae. Nam per multos annos bellum domesticum civitatem Romanam vexavit. Post finem eius belli Romani Augustum principem creaverunt.

Ei Britannia non curae erat. Nec principes secundus et tertius, Tiberius et Caligula, insulam nostram intraverunt; quamquam Caligula de ea intranda cogitavit.
III. Cunobelinus.

[es, eae, ea—Plural Number.]

3. Itaque per centum fere annos reges Britannici vel regnae Britannicae in Britannia regnaverunt, nec Romani Britannos bello vexaverunt. In numero eorum regum erat Cunobelinus. Is revera "Britannorum rex" erat: sic eum Suetonius, scriptor Romanus, nominat. Nam quamquam non omnes gentes Britannicae ei subiectae erant, tamen magnam partem Britanniae mediterraneae et meridianae in unum regnum consociaverat. Caput earum gentium Camulodunum erat. Exstant hodie nummi Cunobelini; in eis nomen regis vel litteras nonnullas eius nominis lectitare possimus:

exstant quoque nummi patris eius Tasciovani et fratris eius Epaticci. Cunobelinus multos annos regnavit; eo fere tempore rex Britannorum erat cum Tiberius et Caligula principes Romanorum erant. Ei ab anno quarto decimo ad annum primum et quadragesimum post Christum natum imperio Romano praerant. Iesus Christus natus erat dum Augustus princeps erat: morti datus erat dum Tiberius imperitabat, ut Tacitus in capite quarto et quadragesimo libri quinti decimi Annalium commemorat. Inter filios Cunobelini erant Carac-tacus et Togodumnus.
4. Is rex magnus et bonus erat, atque defensor acer libertatis Britannicae. Sed Romani tantum regem tolerare non poterant. Itaque de nova expeditione contra Britanniam cogitabant. Poetae Romani eius aetatis insulam nostram et incolas eius saepe commemorant. Horatius eos "feros" et "remotos" et "intactos" (id est "non debelliatos" vel "liberos") nominat: Vergilius eos "toto orbe terrarum divisos" (id est "separatos") vocat. Mare eos ab aliis partibus orbis terrarum separabat; et libertas eis cara erat. Pro aris et focis suis contra Romanos magna virtute pugnaverant, atque hostibus Romanorum in bello Gallico auxilia subministraverant. Itaque Romani libertatem eorum non tolerabant.
IV. Caráctacus.*

[eius and suus, a, um contrasted.]


* Tacitus ducem Silurum Caratacum (non Caractacum) vocat.
PORTA OCCIDENTALIS
COLONIAE CAMVLODVNI

V. Boadicea.*

[ille, illa, illud.]

7. Anno post Christum natum primo et sexagesimo Britanni rebellaverunt. Suetonius Paulinus, unus ex ducibus Neronis, quinti principis Romanorum, Britanniae tum praerat. Ille in Monam insulam penetravit, ubi magnum numerum Druid-
arum trucidavit, et fana eorum vastavit. Sed dum
ille in Cambria abest, Iceni cum Cassis et Trinoban-
tibus aliisque gentibus Britannicis se contra Romanos
consociant. Non mirum est si Britanni coloniam
illum Camulodunum, ubi veterani illi Romani
collocati erant, non amabant. Nam veterani eos
omnibus iniuriis vexabant. Uxorès liberosque
eorum in servitutem deportabant. Viros ipsos
ignavos et servos vocabant. Oppidum iam viis et
aedificiis Romanis ornaverant, sed muris non firma-
verant. Inter illa aedificia templum " Divi Claudii "
erat; nam principem mortuum Romani pro deo
adorabant. Et in illo templo simulacrum Victoriae
collocatum erat.

8. Itaque Boudicea, regina illa audax Iceno-
rum, inter ordines Britannicos in essedo suo equitans,
Britannos suos ad rebellionem incitavit. "Auscul-
tate " inquit " Iceni et Cassi ; auscultate Coritāni,
Trinobantes ! Di nostri nobis victoriam, illis cladem
mortemque parant ! Ecce, colonia Camulodunum
defensoribus nudata est ! Copiae Romanae in
finibus Ordovicum longe absunt, ubi fana Druidarum
vastant. Coloniam illam, ubi pauci tantum veterani
cum uxoribus liberisque suis habitant, facile erit
expugnare. Illos nulla patria ad virtutem incitat ;
nos patria et penates, nos libertas ad arma vocat.
Atque di ipsi nobis omen victoriae et imperii ded-
erunt. Nam simulacrum illud Victoriae praecipita-
verunt. Et Druidae alia portenta nuntiant. Terrae
adhuc ignotae Britannis aliquando subiectae erunt.
Ubi Caesaris numquam steterunt, ibi filii nostri
vel filii filiorum imperitabunt. Vos coloniam illam
crudelem expugnate! Templum dei illius falsi cremate! Viros, feminas, liberos trucidate! Illud est consilium feminae. Num vos viri minus fortis eritis?"

et Verulāmiūm oppugnānt, septuaginta milia
Romānorum trucidānt, ingentem praedam captānt.
Suetoniūs suos prope silvam collocaverat, et se ad
proelium parabat. Britanni Romanos numero
virorum multum superabant, et exspectatione
victoriae triumphabant. Sed pauci illi Romani
magnam victoriam reportaverunt; Britanni contra
legiones Romanas stare non poterant, quia Romani
eos pondere armorum et scientia belli multum super-
abant. In illo proelio Romani octoginta milia
virorum et feminarum trucidaverunt; nam Britanni
feminas suas in vehiculis apportaverant, proelii
spectandi causa. Boadicea ipsa se morti dedit.

VI. Britannia pacata.

hic, haec, hoc.

Romani nondum totam insulam pacaverant. Nam
Britannia provincia turbulenta erat, ut Tacitus
affirmat; et Britanni occidentales et septentrionales
victoriam Romanorum adhuc retardabant. Totam
insula pacare consilium erat Vespasiani, noni
principis Romanorum. Itaque anno duodecimo
post Christum natum Julio Agricolae sum-
mum imperium legionum Britannicarum mandavit.
Huius viri clari vitam Tacitus narravit. Uxor
Taciti filia Agricolae erat. Hunc virum Tacitus
magnopere amabat, et memoriam eius monumento
pulchro consecravit: monumentum est liber ille
de vita eius. Vir iustus, humanus, clemens erat,
si testimōnium Taciti verum est.

deportabunt; et cum totam terram vastaverint, 
solitudinem pacem vocabunt. Sed nondum 'pacata' 
est haec Caledonia. Iceni et Trinobantes Coloniam 
Romanam expugnaverunt et cremaverunt. Femina 
facinoris illius praeclari dux erat. Num vos, viri 
Caledonii, minus fortes eritis? Hodie pacem 
illam Romanam a vobis ipsis et uxoribis liberisque 
vestris propulsate. Patria ipsa vos ad pugnam et 
victoriam vocat!"

† 13. Interea Agricola quoque suos in hunc 
modum ad proelium incitat. "Hic septimus 
est annus, milites, postquam Ordovices debel-
lavistis. Hodie a Caledonibus victoriam reportate. 
Hi se in silvis montibusque suis adhuc occulta-
verunt; hos, homines ignavos, facile in fugam 
dabitis." Et signum pugnandi dedit. Tres 
legiones Romanae et undecim milia auxiliorum in 
campo lato stabant: Caledones in collibus suos collo-
caverant. Primo Caledones missilia Romanorum 
vitabant. Et ipsi multa missilia in Romanos 
iastabant. Sed tandem cohortes illae Batavorum 
ad colles appropinquaverunt, et Caledones ex loco 
propulsaverunt. Nam hi iustum proelium tolerare 
non poterant. Interea equites auxiliorum eos 
vultur indagine circumdecerant. Decem milia 
trucidaverunt vel vulneraverunt. Nonnulli ex 
Caledonibus uxores liberosque suos ipsi morti 
dederunt. Nox finis fuit trucidationis. Postridie 
atrox spectaculum erat: corpora inhumata, casae 
crematae, silentium, solitudo.
VII. Pax Romana.

[Comparatives of Adjectives.]


[Superlatives of Adjectives.]


[Pasive Voice of 1st Conjugation—Present, Past Imperf., Future.]

inquit "Agricola a Tacito laudatur? Nam ab aliis imperatoribus Romanis oppida expugnabantur, agri vastabantur, nationes barbarae debellabantur; sed Agricola Britannos non solum debellavit sed etiam ad vitam humaniorem revocavit." Et Alexander "Magnopere delector" inquit "si victor iustus et clemens fuit. Sed num hic vir omnia illa aedificia Romana aedificavit?" Et ille "Britannia per quattuor saecula aedificiis Romanis ornabatur. Multae ex illis reliquias posterioris aetatis sunt."

17. Tum Marcus "Num filii principum Britannicorum studio linguae Latinae delectabantur?" inquit. Et ille "Filii Britannorum antiquorum animo acri et impigro erant; linguae Latinae libenter operam dabant. Agricola eos aptiores esse ad studia litterarum affirmabat quam Gallorum pueros. Et Martialis, poeta Romanus illius aetatis, Britannos carmina sua cantavisse affirmat. Vos hodierni pila et folle delectamini." Et ego "Nonne tu ipse, patruissem, corporis certaminibus delectaris? Magna est scientia pilam dextra laevaque captare." Et ille "Adulescentulus" inquit "illa scientia satis delectabar; cum senex fuero, fortasse non delectabor." Nos cachinnamus. Nam patruus meus ludo trigonali magnopere delectatur. Tu, mi patruem, huius ludi peritissimus es:

Nec tibi mobilitas minor est, si forte volantem
Aut geminare pilam iuvat aut revocare cadentem

ut est apud poetam Romanum. Mutato nomine de te, patruem, fabula narratur.
VIII. Castellum Rutupinum.

[Questions and Exclamations.]


[qui, quae, quod and quis, quid—in questions.]

19. Inter viam Marcus patruum meum de victoria illa a Caledonibus reportata interrogavit.

Marcus.—Quis fuit ille Galgacus? Num rex antiquus Scotorum fuit?

Patruus meus.—Nulli Scoti eo tempore in Caledonia erant. Nondum in Caledoniam migraverant.
M.—Quid igitur erat nomen incolarum Caledoniae, si non Scoti erant?
P.—Caledonia eo tempore a Pictis aliisque gentibus Caledoniis habitabatur.
M.—Qui erant Picti?
P.—Difficilis est quaestio. De origine Pictorum viri docti disputant.
M.—Quo tempore Scoti in Caledonium migravérunt?
P.—Quinto saeculo post Christum natum.
M.—Qua ex terra migraverunt?
P.—Ex Hibernia eos in Caledonium migravisse scriptores historici affirmant.
M.—Quem igitur primum regem Scotorum fuisset affirmant?
P.—Fergus primus rex Scotorum nominatur.
M.—Cuius partis Caledoniae rex fuit?
P.—Partis meridianoæ.
M.—Itaque Galgacus fortasse Pictus fuit.
P.—Fortasse; sed nihil de eo notum est.

[qui, quae, quod—in clauses which are not questions.]

PRO PATRIA

Antoninus Pius, qui post eum princeps fuit, alterum vallum in ipsa Caledonia inter Clotam et Bodotriam aedificavit: cui nomen hodiernum est Graham’s Dyke. Initio tertii saeculi Septimius Severus, quem Romani paucis annis ante principem creaverant, maximam expeditionem contra Caledones comparavit; postea autem ipse aegrotavit et Eburaci exspiravit. Quo anno quinquaginta milia Romanorum a Caledonibus trucidata suisse narrantur.” Tum Alexander exclamat “Euge, optime! O si sic omnes!”


C

23. Temporibus antiquis portus celeber hic erat, cui nomen erat Portui Rutupino; naves ex Gallia in Britanniam navigantes ad hunc portum plerumque applicabantur. Nam omnium portuum Britannicorum hic optimus erat. Castellum in

IX. Angli et Saxones.

[Second Conjugation—Perfect Stem, Active.]

24. Inter cenam nos pueri "Quis hoc castellum delevit?" inquimus. Et patruus meus "De fortuna castelli nihil constat" inquit; "aetas fortasse muros delevit. Sed vos mihi respondete. Cuius nomen hic praecipuo honore habetur?" Aqua haerebat: nihil habuimus respondere. Et amita
mea "Nonne memoria tenetis?" inquit. Tum Lydia, quae librum de historia Anglica in manibus nuper habuerat, "Angli et Saxones" inquit "in hunc angulum Cantii cursum tenuerunt." Et ille "Verum est" inquit; "nam anno quadragesimo nono Hengistus et Horsa ad insulam Tanatim, quae tum revera insula erat, naves suas applicaverunt. Locus ipse duo tantum vel tria milia passuum a castello Rutupino iacet." Tum illa "Nonne ab angulo Cantii Angli nomen suum habuerunt?" Nos pueri risimus. Sed amita mea "Sic nuper affirmavit vir doctus. Atque nomen ipsum Cantii nihil aliud significat quam promunturium vel angulum." Tum patruus meus "Sed Tacitus populum Germaniae Inferioris commemorat qui nomen habebat Anglorum; pars Sueborum erant." Et Lydia "Fortasse in angulo Germaniae habitabant" inquit. Et ille "In paeninsula Cimbrica revera habitavisse affirmantur; et duo illa verba 'angulus' et 'Cantium' Germanica sunt."

Tanatim applicavit. Eo tempore Aedilberctus rex Cantii erat, qui uxorem Christianam, nomine Berc- tam, habebat, filiam regis Francorum. Itaque rex Christianis benignus fuit, atque Duroverni, in capite regni sui, eis domum praebuit.”


[Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive—how expressed.]

27. Tum nos “Christiani igitur fuerant in Britannia iam ante adventum Sancti Augustini?” inquisimus. Et ille “Fuerant” inquit; “nam basiliae a Christianis Britannicis iam temporibus Romanis aedificatae erant, quorum reliquias vos Dubris vidistis et ego Callevae vidi. Post principatum Neronis multi Christiani in imperio Romano fuerunt; nam anno primo et sexagesimo post Christum natum
Sanctus Paulus Romam captivus deportatus est. 9
Et uxor illius Auli Plautii, qui iam aetate principis
Claudii Britanniae praefuit, Christiana fuisse exis-
timatur. Nam 'superstitionis peregrinae ' accusata
est. Nomen ei fuit Pomponiae Graecinae. Sed
Angli et Saxones, qui multos deos adorabant, basili-
cas. Christianas plerumque deleverant. Basilica
autem Sancti Martini, quae Duroverni erat, non
omnino deleta erat. Durovernum igitur intraverunt
nuntii illi verbi divini, crucem argenteam et simu-
lacrum Christi in manibus tenentes, et carmen
sacrum cantantes: *Iram tuam ab hac urbe et a domo
tua sancta remove, o Deus; quia peccavimus: alleluia*
Sic Beda, vir venerabilis, narrat."

[Fifth Declension.]

28. Et amita mea: "Cur non illud in memori-
iam revocas, quod animum pontificis illius Gregorii
misericordia Anglorum commoverat? Nam multis
annis ante in foro Romano quondam fuit, cum
pueros nonnullos facie pulchra, oculis caeruleis,
capillis flavis vidit. Misericordia commotus est:
nam illi pueri servi erant et venumdabant. Itaque
mercatores, quorum in manu pueri erant, sic inter-
rogavit: "Quae est patria eorum?" inquit. Et
mercatores "Ex Anglia sunt" inquiant, "cuius
incolae huius faciei sunt." Tum Gregorius "Num
Christiani sunt?" "Non sunt" inquiant. Et ille
"Heu!" inquit; "quam pulchra est facies eorum
quos Rex Tenebrarum ministros habet!" Deinde
alia interrogavit: "Quid est nomen gentis eorum?"
inquit. Responderunt eos esse Anglos. Et ille
"Recte!" inquit; "nam angelicam faciem habent:
non Anglos sed Angelos eos vocari oportet. Sed quid est nomen illius partis Angliae in qua habitabant? "Deira vocatur, quae pars Northumbriae est" inquiunt. Sed ille "Recte!" inquit; "nam de ira Dei ad fidem revocandi sunt." Postremo "Quis est rex illius partis Angliae?" inquit. "Aella vocatur" inquiunt. Tum "Alleluia!" inquit; "nam dies adventat cum carmen omnium carminum optimum in Anglia cantabitur!"


1 † 30. Hodie iam quinque dies post Idus September elapsi sunt, et dies ille ater appropinquat qui ultimus feriarum erit. Omnium dierum ille tristissimus est qui finis est feriarum. Nam triste est verbum 'vale,' cum scholae instant. Intra paucos dies patruum meum et amitam meam et Lydiam valere iubebo. Quam bellae fuerunt feriae a mane usque ad vesperum! Quae mutatio rerum instat! Pauci erunt dies feriati, multi profesti.

Ille profestus erit, per quem tria verba silentur:
Et qui festus erit, mane profestus erat.

Nam tribus illis verbis tres res significantur quae puereis carissimae sunt—pila, follis, trigon.
COMMENTARII DE VITA MEA
AD VENTAM BELGARUM
ANNIS MDCCCCXCIX ET MDCCCC.

X. Res Africanae.
[Recapitulation of Verbs.]

† 31. Kalendae sunt hodie Octobres. Apud magistrum meum iam septem dies sum. Qui, cum me vidit, "Salve" inquit; "ut vales? Fueruntne tibi feriae prosperae?" Et ego "Satis recte" inquam. Et ille "Ubi fuisti per ferias?" "In Cantio fui" inquam "apud patrum meum, quie te salvere iubet." "Num quid novi" inquit "inter ferias vidisti?" "Castellum Rutupinum" inquam "vidi: mecum una fuerunt Marcus et Alexander." "Recte" inquit; "num ostreas illic natas gustavistis?" "Nullas gustavimus" inquam; "sed cur interrogas?" "Quia temporibus antiquis ostreae Rutupinae praecavae fuerunt" inquit. Et ego ridens "Piget me" inquam "quod mihi ante hunc diem nihil de re notum fuit." Tum ille "Num pater tuus" inquit "tibi ex Africa Meridiana litteras nuper dedit?" "Non dedit" inquam. Et ille "Magna discordia est" inquit "inter Ministrum nostrum qui Colonii praeeest et Patrum Paulum, ut vocatur, cui cognomen est Krüger: is praefectus est Reipublicae Africanae Batavorum."

XI. Origo Reipublicae Africanae.

[Third Conjugation—Past Imperfect, Active and Passive.]

33. Postridie nos pueri, qui classis quartae
discipuli sumus, magistrum de origine Reipublicae
Africanae Batavorum interrogavimus. "Quis sunt
illi coloni?" inquimus; "quid significat nomen
ipsum Boer?" Et ille "Coloni illi Africani" inquit
"originem suam a Batavis Europaeis ducunt.
Nomen Boer lingua Batava nihil aliud significat
quam 'agricolam' vel 'colonum.' Caesar 'insulam
Batavorum' in libro quarto Belli Gallici com-
memorat. Ea insula inter Rhenum et Vahalem
iacebat: nam Rhenus, ubi in Oceanum influebat,
in duo flumina dividebatur, sicut nunc quoque
dividitur, quorum unum Vahalis nominabatur.
Insulae quae inter haec flumina iacebant 'a nation-
ibus feris barbarisque' incolebantur, ut Caesar
dicit. Martialis, poeta Romanus, eos homines
magnis et robustis membris, capillis flavis vel rufis
fuisse dicit. Tacitus Batavos omnium nationum
Germaniae Inferioris fortissimos fuisse dicit; ex
interioribus partibus Germaniae propter discordiam
domesticam migraverant. Insula eorum pars im-
perii Romani erat; sed Batavi acerrimi defensores
libertatis suae fuerunt. Tributum Romanum non
tolerabant."

[Imperative Active of the Third Conjugation.]

34. "Itaque, ut Tacitus dicit, 'manebat honor
et antiquae societatis insigne.' Vos pueri capita
undetricesimum Germaniae et duodecimum libri
quarti Historiarum legite. In usum proeliorum
reservabantur, et in exercitibus Romanis militabant.
Periti erant natandi. Cohors Batavorum, quae in
exercitu Agricolae militabant, quondam trans fretum
in Monam insulam natavit.

Africam Meridianam incolunt in unam Rempublicam Batavam consociare. Nobis Britannis necesse est principatum nostrum totius Africæ Meridianæ obtinere, et imperium Britannicum, tantis laboribus conditum, defendere.”

XII. Initium Belli.

[Third Conjugation—Future, Active and Passive.]

PRO PATRIA

[Third Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed with s.]

37. PATRUS ANTONIO SUO SALUTEM Dicit.


[Third Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed without any suffix.]

38. PATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM PLURIMAM Dicit. *

Si vales, bene est; ego et mater tua valemus.

'Africa terribili tremit horrida terra tumultu.'

Num versum illum poetae antiqui legisti? Hodie quoque dici potest. Duobus in proeliis hostes vic-

* Hae litterae Idibus Novembris in Angliam redditae sunt.
imus, et Terram Natalem, ut poteramus, defendimus. 
Primam victoriam die tertio decimo ante Kalendas 
Novembres ad Collem Talanam reportavimus, qui 
in angulo Terrae Natalis situs est. Hostes copias 
suas in collem collegerant; sed duae cohortes Hi-
bernicae et una Anglica impigre procucurrerunt et 
hostes ex colle pepulerunt. Sed legatus Britannic-
cus, graviter vulneratus, post proelium exspiravit. 
Postridie alter exercitus Britannicus hostes ad 
Saltum Cervinum, inter Collem Talanam et Castra 
Mariana situm, vicit. Batavi tum quoque in monti-
bus stabant; per totum diem et nostri et hostes for-
tissime pugnaverunt; sub vesperum tres cohortes 
Anglorum et Scotorum una cum manu equitum 
Africanorum levis armaturae montes ascenderunt et 
hostes in fugam dederunt. Batavi duo tormenta 
amiserunt una cum vexillo in quo erat insigne Rei-
publicae Batavae Consociatae. Vale, mi carissime, 
et scribe mox ad nos. Haec ex Colonia die 
septimo ante Kalendas Novembres scripsi.


39. PATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM.*

S.V.B.E.E.V. Has litteras, mi fili, non libenter 
leges. Nam de fortuna mutata dicam. Nostri 
post victorias illas, de quibus in prioribus litteris 
scripsi, loca obtinere non poterant. Itaque 
copiae nostrae reductae sunt et circum Castra 
Mariana collectae; ubi die tricesimo mensis Octobris 
proelium ante oppidum commissum est. Quo in 
proelio nostri laboraverunt. Sed opportune accidit

* Litterae die tertio et vicesimo mensis Novembris redditae.
PRO PATRIA


XIII. Milites Regiae.

[Fourth Conjugation—Present, Active and Passive.]


42. Hodie, qui est dies decimus mensis Novembris, de adventu in Africam Meridianam unius ex magnis illis navibus, quae 'Castella' nominantur, audivimus. A portu nostro Anglico ad Promunturium Spei Bonae intra viginti dies navigaverat. Heri advenit, et statim ad Portum Natalem missa est, quo intra paucos dies perveniet. Sed Castra Mariana ducenta fere milia passuum a Portu Natali distant. In illa autem navi est una cohors eorum qui patriam vocantem audiverunt. Imperator noster, cui cognomen est Buller, pridie Kalendas
Novembres advenerat. Interea nostri Castra Mariana fortiter custodiverunt. Ea loca quae muniri poterant muniverunt. Opportune vero accidit quod tormenta illa navalia, quae ad proelium ante oppidum commissum in ipso tempore advenerunt, nunc in oppido sunt.

**XIV. Tria Oppida Obsessa.**

[Verbs in *io* with Infinitive in *ere*—Present, Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

43. **MATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM PLURIMAM.**

S.V.B.E. Nos valemus. Has litteras, quas Nonis Decembris scribebamus, tu, mi Antoni, non ante ferias Natales accipies : et omnia quae scribere
poteram, iam ante adventum litterarum meorum
5 audiveris. Sed pausa verba ad te mittere cupiebam.
6 Cur tam diu nihil litterarum a te? Ut vales? Quid
tu et condiscipuli tui, Marcus et Alexander, inter
ferias facietis? Mox a te litteras accipiemus, ut
spero. Nos magnum dolorem ex bello capimus.
Batavi Castra Mariana iam plus quam triginta dies
obsident. Oppidum capere magnopere cupiunt,
et fortasse capient. Noctes diesque missilia omnis
generis in oppidum iaciunt, et impetus in nostros
faciunt. Nostri autem quid facere possunt? Deficit
cibus, defect aqua. Vix somnum capere possunt.
Necesse est eis cuniculos et puteos in terra fodere.
Eo se recipiunt si tormenta Batavorum audiantur;
sed pauci tormentis interficiuntur. Sic litterae,
quaer per columbas mittuntur, nuntiant. Et duo
alio oppida Britannica, Adamantopolis et Statio
Bechuanarum, a Batavis obsidentur. Tu vero
mox rescribe. Etiam atque etiam vale.

XV. Victoriae et Clades Britannicae.
[Verbs in io with Infinitive in ere—Perfect Stems.]

44. Idibus Decembris scriptum. Intra hos
1 viginti dies de tribus victoriis atque duabus
3 cladibus Britannicis nuntium accipimus. Exer-
citus Britannicus, in quo octo milia virorum erant,
per fines Orangiae iter faciebat, Adamantopolim
obsidione liberandi causa. Via per campos latos
et apertos ducebat; sed nonnullis in locis tumuli
erant, quos necesse erat superare. Hos Batavi,
9 velut aquilae nidos suos, insederant, et viam
custodiebant. Sed nostri impetus in eos fortissime
fecerunt, tumulos ceperunt, hostes in fugam con-

fecerunt. Quibus in proeliis, ad Montem Bellum et

Lacum Gramineum pugnatis, Custodes Regales et
classiarii nostri praecipuam laudem, reportaverunt.
Inde iter ad Flumen Turbulentum inceperunt.
Dux autem Batavus, cui nomen est Cronje, in ripis
fluminis magnas fossas puteosque foderat, in
quibus copias suas et tormenta occultaverat. Ibi
per totum diem acerrime pugnatum est. Batavi
circiter quingentos ex nostris interfecerunt vel
vulneraverunt. Tandem nostri impetum in sinis-
stram partem fluminis fecerunt, et se traiecerunt.
Tum Batavi se ex proelio receperunt.

† 45. Haec victoria die duodetricesimo mensis No-
vembris reportata est. De qua patruus meus mihi
haec scripsit:—“Victoria nostris non magno usui
erat, quia hostibus instare non poterant. Nam
legatus Britannicus nulos equites habebat. Pedi-
tes nostri ad huiusmodi bellum minus apti sunt.
Batavis, sicut Britannis antiquis, non mos est iusto
proelio pugnare. Equites eorum arma peditum por-
tant et pedibus pugnare possunt. Itaque mobili-
tatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praes-
stant.”—Exercitus noster iam viginti tantum milia
passuum ab oppido obsesso aberat. Sed inter castra
nostra et Adamantopolim mons erat, Macrifontium
nomine, quem necesse erat superare. Legatus nos-
ter quattuor cohortes Caledonum praemisit, loci
occupandii causa. Sed Batavus suos in fossis, quas
ante montem foderat, in insidiis posuerat. De magna
clade Britannica accepta in actis diurnis haec legi.

† 47. Feriae Natales adventant. Intra tres dies apud patrum meum ero. Dulce domum! Sed feriae non hilarae erunt. Nam de tertia clade, in Terra Natali accepta, acta diurna haec nuntiant:—"Magnus ille exercitus Britannicus, cui imperator noster praest, plus quam viginti milia virorum numero, Castra Mariana obsidione liberare contendebat. Inter nostros et oppidum fluebat Tugēla, quem Batavi oc-
cupaverant et in ripis fossas suas mortiferas foderant. Mane diei quinti decimi mensis Decembris imperator noster quattuor legiones suas ad proelium eduxit. Caelum caeruleum et serenum erat; magnus calor solis. Legio Hibernica, quae in sinistro cornu erat, ad ripas fluminis fortissime appropinquavit; sed post-quam quingentos vel sescentos viros amiserunt, se recipere coacti sunt. In dextro cornu tormenta nostra defensoribus nudata sunt; quorum decem ab hostibus capta sunt, postquam ei qui tormentis ministrabant paene omnes interfeci sunt. Sed duo ex tormentis parva manus nostrorum e loco mortifero recepit. Facinus pulcherrimum fuit. In ea manu fuit adulscens egregiae spei, nomine Roberts.” Fuit: nam is quoque, graviter vulneratus, postero die exspiravit. In eo proelio mille ducen-tos viros amisimus.
XVI. Foedus nominis Britannici.

[Present Infinitive of sum.]


[Present Infinitive of First Conjugation.]

49. Postridie patruus meus haec ex actis diurnis recitavit:—“Ex Africa Meridiana nihil novi. Sed magnitudo populi Britannici prope admirabilior in rebus adversis quam in prosperis fuit. Opus magni laboris erit, tot atque tam validos hostes vincere. Sed etiam atque etiam pugnemus, donec vicerimus. Deus nobis fortunam det! Ne desperemus! Festinemus lente, sicut Fabius ille Maximus fecit, de quo poeta Romanus haec scripsit:
Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem.

Hoc bellum Britanniam, matrem tot filiarum egregiarum, cum coloniis suis in unius et maioris populi corpus consociavit.

Una dum Regina nostra est, unus in Reginam amor,
Unum foedus omnis esto nominis Britannici!

Sic una voce exclamat Maior illa Britannia, cui sol numquam occidit. Coloniae autem nostrae liberae maximam sibi laudem esse iudicant, dicere posse:

Filia matris in domo,
Domina sum tamen domi.

Tu, Canada, duo milia filiorum tuorum misisti. Vos, Coloniae Australienses, cum Nova Zelanda et Tasmania octo milia misistis. Tu, Terra Natalis, quae filia Britanniae natu minima es, quinque milia dedisti. Quam vera sunt verba Horatii!

Caelum non animum mutant qui trans mare currunt.

Et in Britannia ipsa magna multitudo voluntariorum nomina sua dederunt. Deus salvam praestet Reginam!"

XVII. Post tenebras lux.

[Present Subjunctive of sum and First Conjugation.]

50. Initium est novi anni. Batavos piget Castra Mariana iam duos menses obsidere; nostros quoque obsideri piget. Hostes igitur operam dant ut oppidum vi expugnent, et diem constituunt quo impetum in Caesaris Castra dent, quae ad meridiem oppidi iacent. De qua re patruus meus haec
recitavit:—"Silentio noctis pedibusque nudis
collem ascendere incipiunt. Sed Mancunienses
nostri ad arma volant. Ad decimam horam diei
pugnatur, quo tempore tantus imber cadit, ut sol
nebulis obscuretur. Tum impetum tam acrem in
Batavos faciunt ut eos propulsent et castra salva
praestent. Pulcherrimum erat facinus. Sed in
oppido summa inopia est, ut litterae, quae per
columnas mittuntur, nuntiant. Cibus carissimus
est; nulli iam boves, nullae oves, nulli porci in
oppido sunt. Carne equina victitant. Multi
homines aegrotant; sed ubi nullae vaccae sunt, lac
deest. Gallinae denariis viginti constant, duo-
decim ova triginta denariis, cetera grandi pretio.
Navis aëria nonnumquam ex oppido emittitur, ut
quae apud hostes aguntur explorentur. Ex qua

NAVIS - AERIA
nostri feminas Batavas cum festo ornatu nonnumquam vident, quae via ferrata apportantur, ut obsidionem spectent." Navis aëria ita facta est ut ad terram applicetur, si necesse sit. Nam cum aëre plena est, in caelum ascendit; cum aër emititur, descendit.

**XVIII. Adamantopolis obsidione liberata.**

† 51. *Die septimo decimo mensis Februarii scriptum.*

[Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of other Conjugations.]

52. AMITA ANTONIO SUO MULTAM SALUTEM DICIT.


XIX. Dies Maiubensis.

[Past Imperfect Subjunctive of sum.]


Unus homo nobis properaudo restituit rem.

Sed eos quoque memoria teneamus, qui pro patria pugnantes vitam exspiraverunt. Solum Africanum Britanniae et coloniarum Britannicarum commune sepulcrum est. Monumentum in memoriam filii imperatoris nostri ad Tugelam factum nuper vidi: in quo haec verba sunt—

**IN MEMORIAM**

FREDERICI HUGONIS SHERSTON ROBERTS
QUI DIE XVIII ANTE KAL. IAN. A. S. MDCCCXCIX VULNU$ MORTIFERUM ACCEPTIT

DUM FACINUS EREGIUM ET AUDAX FACIT
PROPTER QUOD CRUCIS VICTORIANAE DECUS MERUIT.
AD TUGELAM POSTRIDGE EXSPIRARIVIT.

Vita eius brevis sed non imperfecta fuit. Nam quid pulchrius est quam pro patria pugnantevitam exspirare? Tu, mi fili, exemplum tantae virtutis memoria tene. Ab his et huiusmodi viris
imperium Britannicum conditum est et conservabitur. Floreat Etona, ubi adulescens ille fortissimus educatus est!

Quid est imperium Britannicum? Societas populorum et nationum, quae communione beneficiorum officiorumque continetur. Bella enim pro sociis coloniisque sumuntur et geruntur; coloniae pro Britannia, communi omnium Britannorum parente, sanguinem suum profundere paratae sunt. Nam principatus Britannicus imperium et libertatem, res quondam inter se contrarias, consociat. Itaque illud patrocinium orbis terrarum verius quam imperium nominari oportet. Videamus, mi fili, ne, ut maioribus nostris pulcherrimum fuit tantam nobis gloriam imperii tradere, sic nobis turpissimum sit id quod accepimus obtainere et conservare non posse. Illud vero imperii nostri firmissimum fundamentum est quod victos in civitatem admittere possimus. Ianua nostra omnibus aperta est. Batavis, igitur, sicut aliis populis victis, civibus Britannicis esse licet. Ex hostibus socii aliquando fuerint, ut speramus; quo tempore hanc sibi quisque maximam laudem iudicabit, ut de se dicere possit 'Civis Britannicus sum,' et de Britannia—

Fecisti patriam diversis gentibus unam!

Nam quae Claudianus, poeta Romanus, de urbe Roma scripsit, ea etiam verius de Britannia dicere licet:—
Haec est, in gremium victos quae sola recepit,
Humanumque genus communi nomine fovit,
Matris non dominae ritu; civesque vocavit
Quos domuit, nexasque pio longinqua revinxit.
Huius pacificis debemus moribus omnes
Quod cuncti gens una sumus.

Nos, igitur, Hodie, sicut olim Camillus ille
Romanus, templum Concordiae consecremus, in
quo haec verba inscribantur: PACI ET LIBERTATI
RESTITUTAE.

Bellavimus; esto.
Sed cecidere odia, et tristes mors obruit iras.

Tu vero, fili mi carissime, bene vale, et me
ama. Scripsi Nonis Iuniiis, Anno Salutis MDCCCC.
PREPARATIONS.

Note to the Teacher.—The following “Preparations” are not intended to do the work of a vocabulary: they are of the nature of outline lessons on grammatical points, and therefore contain only (1) words presenting some new grammatical feature not previously studied, (2) constructions or phrases which call for special notice. In this respect these Preparations differ from those given in Ora Maritima. The pupil is now supposed to be capable of looking out unknown words in the Alphabetical Vocabulary (pp. 149–175).

In connexion with each new grammatical feature introduced, the necessary grammatical rules and tables are given; so that the pupil using this book has no need of a separate grammar.

The amount of grammar assumed as known at the start is that contained in Ora Maritima, viz., the first three Declensions of Nouns, Adjectives of similar formation (except those in—, is, e of the 3rd Declension), all the tenses of the Indicative Active of the 1st Conjugation and of the verb sum, and a few isolated forms of Pronouns (me, mihi; te, tibi; se, sibi; nos, nobis; vos, vobis).

On the Pronunciation of Words.—If the last syllable but one of a word of more than two syllables is long, it is also accented (thus: remōtus); if short, the accent is thrown back on to the last syllable but two (thus: rēmōvet, rēmōvē). Words of only two syllables are always accented on the first of the two (thus: virēs, virum). Very few Latin words are accented on the last syllable. The only one that occurs in this book is adhūc. This and similar words have lost a syllable, which explains the accentuation: adhūc stands for adhū-ce.

Syllables ending in two or more consonants are mostly long, as in aperta, fenestra; so too are syllables containing a double vowel, as in nautae. But many syllables ending in a single consonant and containing a single vowel are also long, because the vowel is itself a long vowel: all such long vowels are marked in the following Preparations. Thus beata and antiqua have the middle vowel long, and will therefore be marked beāta, antiqua: and it is because the middle syllable in each of these words has a long vowel in it that it is accented (beāta, antiqua). Vowels which do not bear any mark in the following Preparations may be regarded as short, as in domina, amīta, casā, quoque, mea, tua (accented domīna, āmita, ĉāsa, quōque, mēa, tīa).
1. The words printed black are the grammatically important words—here Adjectives of the 3rd Decl. in —, is, e.

1. Septembres, ‘September,’ an Adjective agreeing with Kalendae and meaning ‘seventh’ or ‘belonging-to-the-seventh month.’ The Roman year originally began with March; hence September was then the seventh month. The literal translation of this sentence is ‘To-day there are the September Calends,’ = ‘to-day is the 1st of September.’

3. mensis Septembres, ‘of the September month’ = ‘of the month of S.’

7. celebris, ‘celebrated,’ agreeing with ducis. Ducis is Genitive, because it depends on de vitâ, just as Agricolae does; the meaning is ‘about the life of Agricola, the life of the celebrated general.’ A Noun standing in the same construction as another Noun to which it is adjectival is said to be ‘in apposition’ to it: thus ducis is here in apposition to Agricolae. But in English we should say, ‘about the life of Agricola, the celebrated general,’ without a second ‘of.’

11. alae, ‘eager,’ agreeing with animō. The Abl. without a Preposition here means ‘with,’ as in magnā audāciā pugnābant; see O.M.* p. 143.

It will be seen that Adjectives like September, October, November, December, celebrer, alacer differ from Adjectives like fortis in having a separate form for the Masculine Nominative Singular. This case is formed without the ending -is, and therefore resembles a Noun like imber, rain (stem imbr-).

celeber, celebris, celebre, celebrated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>celeber</td>
<td>celebris celebre</td>
<td>celebrēs celebria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>celebrem celebre</td>
<td>celebrēs celebria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>celebris</td>
<td>celebrārium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>celebri</td>
<td>celebribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. [is, ea, id, Singular Number.]

1. post-quam, lit. ‘after than’ or ‘later than’ — ‘after the time when’ or simply ‘when,’ or ‘after.’ But it must be distinguished from the Preposition post, ‘after’; cp. post prandium, p. 3.

* The letters O.M. stand for Ora Maritima throughout these Preparations.
2. pedestrēs and equestrēs, from adjectives in —, is, e.

8. Id, 'that-thing,' 'that.' eī, 'for that man,' 'for him.'

9. nōn rēvērā dēbellāverat. The so-called 'Conquest of Britain' by Julius Caesar ought rather to be called 'The failure of Caesar to conquer Britain.' Britain was not conquered till nearly 100 years later.

10. ūlūs, 'of that-man,' 'of him,' 'his.' eum, 'that-man,' 'him,' Accusative Case; reportāv-isse, Infinitive formed from the Perfect tense reportāv-i (the Perfect of reportō, 1st Conjugation); the literal translation is 'Tacitus declares him not to have won a great victory.' This construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive (eum reportāvisses) depending on a verb of 'declaring' or 'thinking' is found in English as well as in Latin; but English generally prefers to use 'that' followed by a Nominative and a Verb: thus, 'Tacitus affirms (or says) that he did not win a great victory.' Cp. O.M. § 36, Britanniam esse insulam iūdicābant, 'they judged Britain to be an island.'

14. virī animō fortī, 'men with brave mind' —'men of brave mind'; cp. O.M. § 43, virī membris rōbstīs, flāvis capillīs, oculīs caeruleīs. The Ablative without a Preposition here denotes a quality of the person spoken of, and may therefore be called an Ablative of Quality or Adjectival Ablative.

16. C. here stands for Gāi (as though it were a G).—The coin of Caesar here shown has a head of Venus on one side and on the other the figure of Aeneas carrying Anchises from Troy. Caesar traced his descent from Venus and Anchises.

19. ūlūs, 'of that,' agreeing with belli.

20. eī, 'to that-man,' 'to him.' Britannia nōn cūrae erat, 'Britain was not a care': cūrae is Dative, lit. 'for a care' —'a cause of anxiety.'

22. dē eā intrāndā, 'about it to-be-entered' —'about entering it'; eā agrees with insulā understood, 'about that-island.' Cp. O.M. § 24, locus idōneus est ad nāvigia applicanda, 'for vessels to-be-brought-to-land.'

It will be seen that is, ea, id may be used as an Adjective (—'that') or as a Pronoun (—'that-one,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' etc.).
PREPARATIONS

Is, ea, id—SINGULAR NUMBER.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td>id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ëlus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ël</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ëô</td>
<td>ëä</td>
<td>ëô</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. [Is, ea, id, Singular and Plural Numbers.]

4. ëorum, 'of those,' agreeing with rëgum.

5. eum, 'that-man,' 'him'; cp. § 2, l. 10.

7. ël, 'to that-man,' 'to him'; cp. § 2, l. 8.

10. ëarum, 'of those,' agreeing with gentium.

11. in ëls, 'on those' (agreeing with nummïs understood), on them.

12. ëlus, 'of that,' agreeing with nöminis.—On the first coin shown on p. 5, CUNO = Cunobelinus and CAMU = Camulodunum.

13. ëlus, 'of that-man,' 'of him,' 'his'; cp. § 2, l. 10. Translate 'of his father Tasciovanus.' (See name on second coin).

15. ëô tempore (Abl). . . . cum, 'at that time when,' 'at the time when.' The Ablative without a Preposition here denotes Time when, as in O.M. § 10, secundö saeculö 'in the second century.' The English Preposition to be used in translating such an Ablative is 'at' or 'in' or 'on' (as in 'on the 5th day').

17. ël, 'those' (agreeing with principës understood) 'those-men,' 'they.' Note that the Nominative Case of this Pronoun, whether Singular or Plural, is not used in Latin except when there is some emphasis on the word; in the present sentence the translation 'they' requires some emphasis in English. Where no emphasis is required, the Nominative of a Pronoun meaning 'he,' 'she,' 'it' or 'they' is omitted altogether in Latin, as in § 1, l. 17, saepe nós vïsitant, 'they often visit us.'

19. præ-erant imperïo Römänö (Dat.), 'were-in-command to (-of) the Roman empire.'

20. morti datus, 'put to death'; dare = 'to put'; see Vocab.

23. Caractacus (whom Tacitus more correctly calls Caratacus) and Togodumnus succeeded to their father's throne shortly before
the invasion of Britain by Claudius in A.D. 43. Togodumnus met his death in one of the battles fought in that year.

**is, ea, id—**PLURAL NUMBER.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>el</td>
<td>eae</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eās</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>eārum</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† 4. 1. *is,* 'that-man,' 'he' (emphatic), referring to *Cunobelinus.*

5. *elius,* 'of that,' agreeing with *aetātis.*

6. *elus,* 'of that' (agreeing with *insulae* understood), 'of it, 'its.' . *eōs,* 'those (inhabitants),' 'those-men,' 'them.'

11. *eis,* 'to those-men,' 'to them.'

14. *eōrum,* 'of those-men,' 'of them,' 'their.'

† 5. [*elius, eōrum, eārum,* contrasted with *suus, a, um.]*

3. *elius,* 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to Claudius, who is mentioned in the previous sentence.

6. *suils,* 'his,' agreeing with *ducibus,* and referring to Claudius, who is spoken of in *this* sentence: for *mandāvit,* 'he entrusted,' means 'Claudius entrusted.'

8. *eae,* 'those' = 'those forces,' 'they,' with emphasis.

9. *oppidum Camulodūnum,* 'the town Colchester,' or, as we generally say, 'the town of Colchester.' This 'of' after 'town' is peculiar in English: we do not say 'the river of Thames.' In all such phrases Latin makes the Name agree in Case with the word for 'town,' 'river,' 'mountain,' etc. Thus *flūmen Tamesa* (§ 2), *flūmen Tamesam* (Accusative), *flūminis Tamesae* (Genitive) etc.

11. *ea,* 'that,' agreeing with *urbs* understood; 'that-city was the first Roman city in Britain.' The settlement (*colōnia*) of Roman soldiers was established at Colchester about A.D. 50; and after this the town was called a 'colony.'
13. reportātam, 'won,' an Adjective formed from the Verb reportō, 'I win,' and agreeing with victoriām. Note the Latin order of words ('from the Britons won' = 'won from the Britons'). Similarly in English we may say "an exercise, neatly written, was handed in by me"; the Adjective 'written' being formed from the Verb 'I write.' suō, 'his' or 'his-own,' agreeing with filīō, and referring to princeps Rōmānus. nōmen Britannicō, 'the name Britannicus'; but Britan- nicō does not agree with nōmen in Case; it is a Dative, and agrees with filīō suō, so that the literal translation is 'gave the name to his son, to Britannicus': cp. § 1, l. 7 (ducis).

14. ēlus, 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to princeps Rōmānus in the previous sentence.

16. sē, 'themselves,' referring to the Britons ('they').

19. After the destruction of his dominion in the Eastern part of Britain in A.D. 43 Caractacus withdrew into Wales, where he gained many successes against the Romans.

20. ēlus, 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to Caractacus in the previous sentence.

22. Virocōnii, 'at Viroconium (Wroxeter)'; Dēvae, 'at Deva (Chester)'; Iscae, 'at Isca (Caeleon).’ These Cases denoting 'at' are called Locative Cases; they are found chiefly in Names of Towns, which accordingly have one more Case than other Nouns. But the Locative is always the same in form as one of the other Cases; in the 1st and 2nd Declensions, Singular Number, it is the same in form as the Genitive. Note that there is no Preposition used to express 'at' before the Name of a Town.

25. ēorum, 'of those-men,' 'their,' referring to Silurēs in the previous sentence.

26. Rōmam, 'to Rome.' The Accusative of the Name of a Town without a Preposition is used to express 'to'; so in O.M. § 24, Dubrās, 'to Dover.' 'To Wroxeter' would be Virocōnium; 'to Chester,' Dēvam; 'to Caerleon,' Iscam.

The words ēlus and ēorum, ēārum are Genitive Cases of is, ea, id, and therefore mean properly 'of that-person' or 'of that-thing'; plural, 'of those-persons' or 'of those-things.' Hence they generally refer to some person or thing mentioned in a previous sentence. The Adjective suus, a, um, on the other hand, means properly 'his own,' or 'her own,' or 'its own,' or 'their own.' Hence it naturally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence; for we do not often say
PREPARATIONS

'his own' when we are referring to a person or thing mentioned in a different sentence. For instance, we may say 'Claudius gave this name to his own son,' but not 'Claudius was the emperor of Rome. And the Romans gave this name to his own son.'—The person or thing referred to by suus, a, um generally stands in the Nominative Case, but not always: for instance, we may say 'I will visit him in his own house' (domi suae eum visitábō, where suae refers to the Accusative eum); 'give to each man his own' (suum cuique dā, where suum refers to the Dative cuique).

6. [ipse, ipsa, ipsum, Singular and Plural.]

4. Ipsum, 'himself,' agreeing with rēgem. rēgem spectandī, 'of seeing the King'; cp. O.M § 28, Rōmānī cupidi erant insulam nostram visitandī et explorandī, 'of visiting and exploring our island': spectandī is the Genitive of a Noun in -nām, formed from the Verb spectō. These Nouns in -nām are like the English Nouns in -ing, which are formed from Verbs ('seeing,' 'visiting').

7. Ipsō, 'himself,' agreeing with Caractacō.

8. ēius, 'of that man,' 'of him,' 'his,' ēius, not suīs, is used here, though it refers to Caractacō in the same sentence, because suīs would naturally refer to multitūdō, and this would make nonsense ('their own wife and brothers'). in caēnis, 'in chains' = 'chained.' [So in Livy, xiv. 40. 8.]

9. Ipse, 'himself,' agreeing with Caractacus.

11. Ipsius agrees with principis. collectātus . . . inquit, 'placed before the eyes of the Emperor himself, he said' = 'he, placed before the eyes of the Emperor himself, said.' The Adjective collectātus agrees with 'he' in inquit, which might have been expressed by a separate word (Is, ante ocūlōs . . . collectātus, inquit). Compare in English 'Driven out of its course by adverse winds, the ship was cast ashore' = 'The ship, driven . . . winds, was cast ashore.' The only difference is that the order of words in Latin would be 'The ship, out of its course by adverse winds driven, was cast ashore.'

14, 15. tōt orbī terrārum imperiānā, 'of giving orders to (= of holding sway over) the whole world;' imperiānā is the Genitive of a Noun in -nām formed from the Verb imperīō: tōt orbī is Dative, depending on imperiānā. The Adjective tōtus, a, um is declined like other Adjectives in -us, a, um, except in the Gen. Sing. tōt-iūs and the Dat. Sing. tōt-i. These forms are the same for all three Genders, like ips-iūs, ips-i.

19. Ipsī, 'himself,' agreeing with Caractacō.
PREPARATIONS

It will be seen that the word *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* is used like the English word ‘-self’ in ‘my-self,’ ‘thy-self,’ ‘him-self,’ ‘her-self,’ ‘it-self’; and in the Plural like ‘-selves’ (our-selves, your-selves, them-selves). It is generally an Adjective, but may also be a Pronoun.

**Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, ‘-self.’**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>SINGULAR.</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>PLURAL.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ipsius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. *ille, illa, illud* (declined at end of § 8).

4. *ille,* ‘that-man,’ ‘he,’ referring to Suetonius (l. 2, ‘the former’), not to Nero (l. 3). The Nominative Case always has some emphasis; cp. l. 7.

10. *illam,* ‘that,’ agreeing with *colōniam.* *Illi,* ‘those,’ agreeing with *veterānī.*

16. *illa,* ‘those,’ agreeing with *aedificia.* Here *illa* comes before its Noun, which is its usual position, except when an Adjective or another Noun is added to the phrase, as in *veterānī illī Rōmānī* and *colōniam illam Camulodūnum*; in such cases it comes between the Noun and the other word.

18. *illo,* ‘that,’ agreeing with *templō.*

8. 1. *illa,* ‘that’ or ‘the,’ agreeing with *rēgīna.*

5. *illīs,* ‘for those-men,’ ‘for them,’ referring to the Romans, who are in her mind; Dative Case.

11. *illōs,* ‘those-men,’ ‘them’; put at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis; so, too, *nōs* (l. 12), which is made still more emphatic by being repeated: ‘us our country and homes, us freedom calls to arms.’

14. *illud,* ‘that,’ agreeing with *simulācrum.*

17, 18. In Cowper’s poem the Druid says to Boadicea—

‘Regions Caesar never knew
Thy posterity shall sway.’
PREPARATIONS

20. illud, 'that,' agreeing with consilium understood: 'that (counsel) is the counsel of a woman.' Cp. on § 5, l. 11.

21. num ... eritis, 'will you men be less brave?' Num is a word that turns a statement into a question. The only English word by which it can be translated is 'whether.' But this use of 'whether' is old-fashioned, and no word is necessary in English for num.

It will be seen that ille, illa, illud, like is, ea, ēā, may be used either as an Adjective (= 'that') or as a Pronoun (= 'that-one,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' etc.).

ille, illa, illud, 'that,' 'that-one.'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Masc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ille</td>
<td>ille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illus</td>
<td>iillorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iili</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iilio</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† 9. 4. ex insulā Mōnā : cp. on § 5, l. 9, oppidum Camulodūnum.

7. iam tum, 'already then' — 'even then.' cōpīā mercātōrum celebres, 'crowded with a multitude of merchants'; cp. O.M. § 15, crēber pueris et puellis.

11, 12. Milia (Plur.) takes the Gen. (Rōmānōrum); cp. l. 21.

13. suōs, 'his men,' 'his own men,' = suōs virōs. sē parābat, 'was preparing himself.' ad, 'for.'

16. pauci illi Rōmānī, 'those few Romans'; cp. on § 7, l. 16.

22. proelī spectāndī causā, 'for the sake of seeing the battle,' lit. 'for the sake of the battle to-be-seen'; cp. on § 2, l. 22.

23. ipsa sē, 'herself . . . herself'; ipsa agrees with Boadicēa.

10. [hic, haec, hēc (declined at end of § 12).]

1. Hic, 'this,' agreeing with finis understood; cp. on § 5, l. 11.

6. nōni principēs, in apposition to Vespasiāni; cp. on § 1, l. 7.
10. Hūlus, 'of this;' agreeing with virī clārī.
11. Hune, 'this;' agreeing with virum.

11. 1. primō annō, like eō tempore, § 3, l. 15.
3. hanc, 'this;' agreeing with gentem. fere tōlam, 'almost whole'; translate 'almost the whole of this tribe.'
7. hi, 'these-men' or 'the latter': contrast ille, illa, illud, 'the former,' § 7, l. 4. peritī natandī. The Adjective peritus, 'skilled,' takes a Genitive (Engl. 'skilled in'); O.M. § 15, lūdōrum peritus.
10. haec, 'this' or 'the latter;' agreeing with classis understood.
11–14. ipse penetrat, 'he himself (= Agricola) penetrates.'
15. velut in alteram insulam, 'as (or as it were) into a second island'; cp. O.M. § 8, noctū pharōs spectāmus, velut stellās clārās in ōceanō.
18. Graupius, the proper form of the word 'Grampian,' which latter has come from a misprint in the earliest printed edition of the Agricola of Tacitus, published in the 15th century. But for this we should have said 'My name is Norval; on the Graupian Hills,' etc.
20. his, 'with these' (= the following), agreeing with verbīs.
12. 1. haec, 'this,' agreeing with pugna.
2. tōtī Britanniae, 'to the whole of Britain'; cp. § 11, l. 3.
3. 4. hi, 'these,' agreeing with montēs (masc.); haec, 'these,' agreeing with silvae (fem.); haec, 'these,' agreeing with maria (neut.).
5. hune, 'this,' agreeing with angulum.
7. nē mare quidem, 'not even the sea.' Note nē instead of nōn, and the position of mare between nē and quidem.
9. hane, 'this,' agreeing with insulam.
12. vestrōs is masculine because it belongs to both the words līberōs and uxorēs, which together = hominēs, 'human beings'; and homō is always masc. in Latin.
13. vastāverint, Fut. Perf.; 'when they shall have laid waste.'
15. haec, 'this,' agreeing with Calēdōnia: 'this Caledonia of ours.'
PREPARATIONS

hic, haec, hoc, 'this,' 'this one.'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hi-c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hun-c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hūlus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>hul-c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hō-c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The c which is printed after the hyphen is an addition which is made to the word, but only in certain Cases. If you take off the c, the rest of these Cases look more like Cases of other Pronouns (ille, illum, illius, illi, illō). The c means 'here,' like the French ci in celui ci; thus hi-c = 'this here.' The Dative Singular is to be pronounced as one syllable.

† 18. 1. in hunc modum, 'in the following way'; for hoc modō.
5. hī, 'the latter,' the Caledonians, as also in l. 14.
6. hominēs ignāvōs, 'cowardly fellows,' in apposition to hōs. Homēō is sometimes used in a contemptuous sense, but never vir.
18. suōs ipsis, 'themselves their-own'; cp. ipsis sē, § 9, l. 23.

14. [Comparatives of Adjectives.]
4. hūmān-īor, 'kind-er,' 'more humane'; from hūmān-us, a, um, § 10, l. 14.
5. clēment-īor, 'more clement,' 'more merciful'; from clēmens, § 10, l. 14.
6. turbulent-īor, 'more turbulent'; from turbulent-us, a, um, § 10, l. 3.
7. fort-īor-ēs, 'brav-er,' agreeing with hostēs; from fort-īs, e, § 2, l. 14. audāc-īor-ēs, 'bold-er,' from audax, § 8, l. 1.
9. just-īor-ēm, just-er,' agreeing with sē; from just-us, a, um, § 10, l. 14. Translate 'who showed himself juster?'
12. in-hūmān-lus, 'more in-human,' 'un- kinder,' agreeing with quid, Neuter. saev-lus, 'more savage'; from saev-us, a, um, § 12, l. 6.
PREPARATIONS

13. crūdēl-lōr-ēs, 'more cruel,' agreeing with hostēs; from crūdēl-is, e, § 8, l. 19.

18. cār-ior, 'dear-er'; from cār-us, -a, -um, § 4, l. 11.

19. ācr-lōr-ēs, 'keen-er,' agreeing with dēfensōrēs; from ācr, ācr-is, e, § 4, l. 2.

20. pulchr-ius, 'more glorious,' agreeing with nihil, Neuter; from pulche., pulchr-a, um, § 10, l. 13.

21. miser-ius, 'more miserable'; from miser, miser-a, um.

It will be seen that the Comparative of an Adjective, which is formed in English by adding -er or by the use of 'more,' is formed in Latin by adding -ior (or, for the Neuter, -ius) to the part of the Adjective that remains when the ending -us or -is or -s alone of the Nominative Singular Masculine is cut off. Thus:

**Without the Ending.**

| car-us (-a, -um) | car- | car-ior, car-ius |
| fort-is (-e) | fort- | fort-ior, fort-ius |
| clēmen-s, for clēment-s | clēment- | clēment-ior, clēment-ius |
| audax, -audāc-s | audāc- | audāc-ior, audāc-ius |

When the Nom. Sing. Masc. is formed without any -us or -is, there is nothing to cut off from this Case.* Thus:

miser (miser-a, -um) miser- miser-ior, miser-ius

But the e that comes before the r is dropped whenever it is dropped in the Feminine and Neuter (and in the other Cases of the Masculine) of the Adjective itself. Thus:

pulcher (pulchr-a, -um) pulchr- pulchr-ior, pulchr-ius
äcer (äcr-is, -e) äcr- äcr-ior, äcr-ius

The Comparative, therefore, may be found most easily by cutting off the ending of the *Feminine*, and adding -ior or -ius.

It will be seen also that the Comparative of an Adjective is itself an Adjective; it can be declined (like a Noun of the 3rd Declension, such as Masc. scriptor, Neut. corpus), and must agree with the Noun to which it belongs. Its Feminine is the same as its Masculine; but its Neuter is different in the Nominative and Accusative Cases.

---

* The Nominative Singular Masculine of these Adjectives in or has already dropped its ending.
Decletion of Comparatives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>SINGULAR.</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>PLURAL.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Masc. and Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Masc. and Fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cărlor</td>
<td>cărius</td>
<td>cărlor-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cărlor-em</td>
<td>cărius</td>
<td>cărlor-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cărlor-is</td>
<td>cărius</td>
<td>cărlor-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cărlor-ī</td>
<td>cărius</td>
<td>cărlor-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cărlor-ē</td>
<td>cărius</td>
<td>cărlor-ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that if we want to say 'less dear,' 'less brave,' etc. (which is also a kind of Comparative of 'dear,' 'brave,' etc.) we must use the Adverb minus, which means 'less': for instance, minus căerus, minus căra, minus cărum, 'less dear.'

15. [Superlatives of Adjectives.]

2. saev-issima, 'the most savage,' agreeing with bella; from the Adjective saev-us, a, um. inhūmān-issima, 'the most inhuman'; from inhūmān-us, a, um.

4. pugnāta, 'fought,' is an Adjective formed from the Verb pugnō, 'I fight,' and agreeing with bella illa; the whole phrase temporibus antiquis contrā gentēs barbarās pugnāta is like the phrase ā Britannis reportātam in § 5, ll. 12, 13; see note there.

5. crūdēl-issimī, 'most cruel' = 'very cruel,' agreeing with hostēs; from crūdēl-īs, e.

9. ātil-issima, 'most useful' = 'very useful,' agreeing with pāx; from ātil-īs, e.

12. revocāvīt means here not 'called back,' but 'called off,' 'withdrew.' optimīs, 'very good,' agreeing with viis; irregular Superlative of bonus, a, um, § 4, l. 1.

13. pulcher-īmīs, 'very fine,' agreeing with aedificiīs; from pulcher, pulchr-ā, um. celeber-īmīs, 'very famous,' from celeber, celebr-īs, e, § 1, l. 8. templīs, etc., in apposition to aedificiīs.

18. fort-issimī, 'very brave,' agreeing with dēfensorēs; from fort-īs, e. ōcer-īmī, 'very keen'; from ōcer, ācr-īs, e.

22. Callēvae Atrebatum, 'at Calleva of the Atrebates' = 'at Silchester'; Callēvae is the Locative; cp. Dēvae and Isca, § 5.

24. in insulā Vectī, at Brading, near Sandown. In several of the rooms the floor is covered with mosaics.
27. mediocriter hūmānae, 'moderately civilized,' 'pretty civilized.' Contrast with this hūmanissimus = 'very civilized.'

It will be seen that the Superlative of an Adjective, which is formed in English by adding -est, or by the use of 'most,' is formed in Latin by adding -issimus, -issima, -issimum to the part of the Adjective that remains when the ending -us or -is or -s alone of the Nominative Singular Masculine is cut off. Thus:—

**WITHOUT THE ENDING.**  
**SUPERLATIVE.**

cār-us (-a, -um)  
cār-  
cār-issimus, cār-issima, cār-issimum

fort-is (-e)  
fort-  
fort-issimus, fort-issima, fort-issimum

clēmen-s, for clēment-s  
clēment-  
clēment-issimus, clēment-issima, clēment-issimum

But when the Nom. Sing. Masc. is formed without any -us or -is, the Superlative is formed by doubling the last letter of the Nom. Sing. Masc. and adding -imus, -ima, -imum. Thus we get (with rr)—

**SUPERLATIVE.**

miser (miser-a, -um)  
miser-r-imus, miser-r-ima, miser-r-imum

pulcher (pulchr-a, -um)  
pulcher-r-imus, pulcher-r-ima, pulcher-r-imum

äcer (ācr-is, -e)  
ācer-r-imus, ācer-r-ima, ācer-r-imum

Note that the e before the r of the Nom. Sing. Masc. is never dropped to form the Superlative.

Superlatives are declined in the same way as other Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.

16. [Passive Voice of 1st Conj.; Present, Past Imperfect, Future (conjugated at end of § 17).]

7. delectant-ur, 'they are delighted,' 'they are interested'; Passive of dēlectant, 'they delight,' 'they please.' The word suae in l. 6 is emphatic, 'their own'; these two boys are Scots.

8. laudāt-ur, 'is praised'; Passive of laudat, 'praises.'

Nōn-ne in l. 7 is simply the word nōn with -ne tacked on to it to turn the statement into a question; compare O.M. § 19, nōn-ne in oppidīs habitābant? 'did not they live in towns?' The word -ne, like num (§ 8), need not be translated by any separate word in English.
PREPARATIONS

9. expugnābant-ur, 'used to be taken by storm'; Passive of expugnābat. Similarly vastābant-ur and dēbellābant-ur in l. 10.

Note that the Person by whom the action is done is expressed by the Preposition ā or ab with the Ablative Case; thus ā Tacitō and ab alīis imperātoribus.

13. dēlecto-r, 'I am delighted (or pleased)'; Passive of dēlectō.

17. ornābāt-ur, 'was being adorned'; Passive of ornābat. aedificīs Rōmānīs, 'with Roman buildings' (l. 16).

17. 2. dēlectābant-ur, 'used to be delighted (or pleased).'

4. animō acri et impigrō, 'with (=of) keen and active mind'; Ablative of Quality, used like an Adjective (keen-minded) after the verb 'to be.' Cp. § 2, l. 14.

8. Britannōs cantāvisse, Accusative with Infinitive; § 2, l. 10.

9. dēlectā-mīnī, 'are delighted,' with vōs, 'you'; Passive of dēlectā-tīs. Translate 'you boys of the present day take pleasure in . . .'

10. patru-issīme, 'kindest,' 'most like a kind uncle,' is the Vocative of patruissimus, a Superlative invented by the poet Plautus as a joke. It is formed not from any Adjective, but from the Noun patru-us; as though we were to say in English 'uncle, uncl-er, uncl-est.'

11. dēlectā-rīs, 'you are delighted,' 'you take pleasure'; Passive of dēlectā-s. Here it stands in a question: nōn-ne dēlectāris? 'are you not delighted?' corporis certāminibus, 'by contests of the body' = 'by athletic sports.'

13. dēlectāba-r, 'I used to be delighted'; Passive of dēlectāba-m. adulescens here stands in apposition to 'I'; 'I, a young man,' or 'I, as a young man.'

14. dēlectābo-r, 'I shall be delighted'; Passive of dēlectābō.

18, 19. There are two lines of verse by a poet of the first century A.D. 'Nor hast thou less mobility = (quickness of movement), if perchance it pleases thee either to double (= to return) the flying ball or to pick it up (= to catch it) falling.' volant-em and cadent-em are Acc. Sing. of Adjectives formed from the Verbs volō (1st Conj.) and cadō (3rd Conj.): Nom. volan-s, caden-s, like monstran-s in O.M. § 41, digitō ad orientem monstrans.

20. mūtātō nōmine, etc., 'the story is told about you with changed name (= under a different name). This is a quotation from Horace; it means 'the cap fits you.'
Formation of the Passive Voice.

It will be seen that the Passive of the Present, the Past Imperfect and the Future Tenses is formed from the Active (i.) by adding -ur in the 3rd Persons Sing. and Plur.; (ii.) by adding -r in the 1st Persons Sing. and Plur.; which r displaces the last letter of the Active if it is a consonant. (iii.) by changing the -s of the 2nd Person Sing. into -ris, and the -ris of the 2nd Person Plur. into -mini.

Thus we get (with some changes in the quantities of the vowels):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.</th>
<th>PRESENT PASS.</th>
<th>PAST IMPERF. PASS.</th>
<th>FUTURE PASS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>délecto·r</td>
<td>délectāba·r</td>
<td>délectābo·r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>délectā·ris</td>
<td>délectābā·ris</td>
<td>délectābe·ris*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>délectāt·ur</td>
<td>délectābāt·ur</td>
<td>délectābit·ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td></td>
<td>délectābāmu·r</td>
<td>délectābimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>délectā·mini</td>
<td>délectābā·mini</td>
<td>délectābi·mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>délectant·ur</td>
<td>délectābant·ur</td>
<td>délectābunt·ur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Note that in this form (2nd Pers. Sing. Fut.) there is a further change of i into e; délectabi·s becomes délectabe·ris.

† 18. In this section it will be seen that Questions may be introduced either (1) by words like cūr, 'why'; quota hōra, 'what o'clock'; quandō, 'when'; or (2) by a word like num or -ne, which need not be translated by any separate word in English. There is a great difference between these two kinds of question. Try answering them. The second kind may be answered by a simple 'yes' or 'no'; thus nōn-ne melius erit? 'will it not be better?' expects the answer 'yes': and num vōs viri minus fortēs eritis? 'will you men be less brave?' (§ 8) expects the answer 'no.' But the first kind cannot be answered by either 'yes' or 'no,' and takes no num or -ne.

3. Rutupiās, 'to Richborough'; Accusative of the Plural Name Rutupiae; cp. Rōmam dēportāvērunt, § 5, l. 26.—So in l. 9 (lit. 'you will come to R.' = 'you will arrive at R.')

14. melius, 'better,' Neuter Comparative of bonus, a, um; cp. optimus, § 15, l. 12.

16. festināre, 'to hurry,' different from properāre, 'to hasten.'

20. quandō, 'when?' (= 'at what time?'), differs from cum, 'when' (l. 9).
PREPARATIONS

19. [qui, quae, quod and quis, quid, in questions.]

2. à Calēdonibus reportātā ; cp. § 5, ll. 12, 13, à Britannis repon-
tātam.

3. quīs, 'who,' agreeing with Galgacus ('Galgacus was who?').

8. quīd, 'what,' agreeing with nōmen.

12. qui, 'who,' agreeing with Pictī.

15. quō, 'at what,' agreeing with tempore; cp. eō tempore,
§ 3, l. 15.

18. quā ex = ex quā, 'from what,' with terrā.

21. quem, 'whom'; fuiisse, 'to have been,' from fui. Cp.
§ 2, l. 10.

24. cūlus, 'of which,' agreeing with partis.

It will be seen that qui, quae, quod is used as an Adjective,
= English 'what?' or 'which?'. In the Nominative Case
Singular there is also a Pronoun, quīs (Masc. and Fem.) = 'who?'
quīd (Neut.) = 'what?'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>qui (quīs)</td>
<td>quae (quīs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td></td>
<td>cūlus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td></td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abi.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quōs</td>
<td>quās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>quōrum</td>
<td>quārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abi.</td>
<td>}</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Dative Singular is one syllable (compare huīc, § 12, end);
but it is sometimes pronounced as two syllables in order to
distinguish it from the Nom. Masc.
20. [qui, quae, quod, without any questioning sense.]

7. qui, 'who,' referring to Hadriānō.
10. eūlus, 'of which' or 'whose,' referring to vallum.
11. qui, 'who,' referring to Antōnīnus Pius.
13. cui, 'to which,' referring to vallum.
14. quem, 'whom,' referring to Septimiūs Sévĕrus.
15. paucis annis ante, 'a few years before;' lit. 'by a few years before (or previously)'; ante is here an Adverb, not a Preposition.
17. Eburācī, 'at York'; Locative Case of Eburācum; cp. on § 5, l. 22.
18. quō, 'in which,' agreeing with annō. trucidāta fuisse narrantur, 'are said to have been slaughtered.'
20. sī sīc omnēs, lit. 'oh, if thus all!'= 'oh, if they had killed them all thus!'

It will be seen that qui, quae, quod (but not quis or quid) may be used without any questioning sense, just like the English 'who' or 'which.' Sometimes it begins a separate sentence, as in the last instance above (Quō annō quinquāgintā milia Rōmānōrum trucidāta fuisse narrantur), which is just as much a separate sentence as if it were a question (Quō annō ... narrantur? 'in which year are fifty thousand Romans said to have been slaughtered?'). But generally qui, quae, quod begins a little sentence which is only a part of a bigger sentence, as in Septimiūs Sévĕrus [quem Rōmānī paucis annis ante principem creāverant] maximam expeditionem comparāvit. In such cases the little sentence, here printed in square brackets, is called at Subordinate Clause. But if you examine it, you will find that it is complete in itself: 'whom the Romans had created emperor is like whom had the Romans created emperor?' (Quem Rōmānī principem creāverant?), except that it is not a question. This helps us to see the reason for the Case and the Gender and Number of quem. It is in the Accusative Case because, if the clause were turned into a separate sentence, the word for 'whom' would have to be in the Accusative Case: it is in the Masculine Gender and the Singular Number because it refers to Septimiūs Sévĕrus which stands in the other clause of the sentence. Thus in order to find the Case of 'which' turn the clause into a separate sentence: in order to find its Gender and Number think of what is meant by the word.
RULE.—Quî, quae, quod, when it introduces a Subordinate Clause, stands in the Case in which it would stand if the Clause were a separate sentence; and it agrees in Gender and Number with the Noun to which it refers.

Note that the Case of the Noun to which it refers may happen to be the same as the Case of quî, quae, quod itself, as in Antòninus Pius, quî . . . ; see l. 11.

† 21. 1. tû-ne Pictus es? 'are you a Pict?' The -ne turns the statement into a question, as in § 18, l. 14, nôn-ne melius erit?; and the word tû is put in because it is emphatic. 'Are you a Pict?' (without emphasis) would be Pictus-ne es? 'Are you not a Pict?' would be Nôn-ne Pictus es?

4. et frâtris tuī, 'and your brother's (name).'

6, 7. tōtī insulae nōmen est Britanniae, 'to the whole island there is the name Britain,' 'the whole island has the name Britain'; cp. on § 5, l. 13 (nōmen Britannicō).

14. Antōni, Vocative of Antōnīus (the writer of these Commentaries); cp. filī, Vocative of filius.

18. ubi libertās, ibi patria est, 'where (or wherever) there is freedom, there is the fatherland.'

22: [2nd Conjugation; Pres., Past Imperf., and Future, Active.]

2. videō, 'I see.' Carefully note the endings of the Verbs in black print below, and compare them with the endings of the 1st Conj. All Verbs of the 2nd Conj. will be found in the Vocabulary with the ending ēō.

5. vident, 'they see.' salvete! 'hail!' lit. 'be safe and sound.' gaudēmus, 'we are glad.'

7. respondet, 'replies,' 'responds.' bene nōs habēmus, lit. 'we have ourselves well' = 'we are all right'; nous nous portons bien.

8. nōs nōn pigēbit, 'it will not vex us' = 'we shall not mind.' Pīget, 'it vexes,' is a Verb which can only be used in the 3rd Pers. Sing.; cp. 'it rains,' etc. sedēre, 'to sit down.'

9. habēbimus, 'we shall have.' in oculīs = 'in sight.'

10. vidētis-ne, 'do you see?' ut . . . déle, 'how time destroys everything.'

11. rident, 'laugh,' or 'smile'; cp. cachinnāre, § 17, l. 15.
14. *lace*, 'it lies' = 'it is situated' (*situm est*).
19. *dēlētus, a, um*, 'destroyed,' an Adjective formed from *dēleō*. *spectat ad*, 'looks towards' = 'faces'.
22. *habēbat*, 'it used to have,' 'it had.'
24. *vidēs*, 'you see' = 'one sees'; cp. O.M. § 11, *ex castellō fretum Gallicum spectās*, 'one looks at the English Channel.'

It will be seen that the Present, the Past Imperfect and the Future Tenses of the 2nd Conjugation differ from those of the 1st Conjugation only in having an *e* instead of an *a* in the endings. (In the 1st Conjugation the 1st Pers. Sing. of the Present has lost its *a*: *spectō* is for *spectād*).

Second Conjugation—Pres., Past Imperf., Fut.

**ACTIVE VOICE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PRESENT.</th>
<th>PAST IMPERFECT.</th>
<th>FUTURE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S.</td>
<td>habeō</td>
<td>habēbam</td>
<td>habēbō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habēs</td>
<td>habēbās</td>
<td>habēbis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habet</td>
<td>habēbat</td>
<td>habēbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td>habēmus</td>
<td>habēbāmus</td>
<td>habēbimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habētis</td>
<td>habēbātis</td>
<td>habēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habent</td>
<td>habēbant</td>
<td>habēbunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.**

| habērē |

**IMPERATIVE.**

| S. 2 | habē |
| P. 2 | habēte |

23. [4th Declension and 2nd Conjugation, Passive (same tenses).]
1. *portus*, 'a port,' 'a harbour.' The case-endings of the Nouns printed black in this section should be compared with those of the 2nd Decl.; for instance, *portus* with *hortus*.
3. *ad hunc portum*, 'to this harbour.'
4. *omnium portuum*, 'of all harbours.'
6. *in litore portūs*, 'on the shore of the harbour.'
12. *quattuor et quadrāgintā passūs longum*, 'forty-four paces (or yards) long.'
PREPARATIONS

13. *in manū,* ‘in the hand’ = ‘in our hands.’
*tenēbamus,* ‘we held,’ or ‘we were holding,’ from *teneō.*

16. *per-tinet,* ‘extends,’ ‘stretches’; from *per-tineō* (which is a compound of *per* and *teneō,* lit. ‘I hold through’).

17. *ūsū,* ‘for use’ (Dat.). *Cui* is also a Dative, so that the literal translation of the sentence is ‘To whom was this tunnel for a use?’ or ‘To whom did this tunnel exist for a purpose?’ In English we should say, ‘To whom was it *of use,* or *useful*?’

This example throws light upon the meaning of the Dative in such sentences as *ei Britannia non cūrae erat* (§ 2, l. 20), where we should naturally say in English, ‘to him Britain was not *an anxiety*’; but the Latin means properly ‘to him Britain did not *serve as an anxiety* = was not a cause of anxiety.’

19. *dē ūsū,* ‘about (or concerning) the use.’

20. *si castellum obsidēbatur,* ‘if (= if at any time) the castle was besieged’; Passive of *obsidēbat* from *ob-sideō* (which is a Compound of *ob* and *sideō,* lit. ‘I sit down against’).

21. *praebēři,* ‘to be provided’; Passive of *praebēre,* ‘to provide.’ *Praebeō* is contracted from *praehibeō,* lit. ‘I hold forth (*-hibeō* = *habeō*).

23. *ad dextrum cernū,* ‘at the right wing’; *cornū* is (not Abl. but) Accusative Singular of a Neuter Noun of the 4th Decl.

28. *custōdem valēre iubēmus,* ‘we bid the keeper good-day (lit. to-be-in-good-health).’

## Fourth Declension.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINES &amp; FEMININES.</th>
<th></th>
<th>NEUTERS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>N., V.</em></td>
<td><em>portus</em></td>
<td><em>portūs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em></td>
<td><em>portum</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em></td>
<td><em>portūs</em></td>
<td><em>portuum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em></td>
<td><em>portū</em></td>
<td><em>portibus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rule of Gender.**—Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-us* are Masculine, except a few which are Feminine (*manus,* ‘hand’; *Īdūs,* plur., ‘Ides’; and a few others). Note that none of these Feminines end in *-tus*; all those that end in *-tus* are Masculine.

Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-ū* are Neuter.
PREPARATIONS

Second Conjugation—Pres., Past Imperf., Fut.
PASSIVE VOICE (see Rule, § 17).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.</th>
<th>PRESENT.</th>
<th>PAST IMPERFECT.</th>
<th>FUTURE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>habeo-r</td>
<td>habēba-r</td>
<td>habēbo-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>habē-ris</td>
<td>habēba-ris</td>
<td>habēbe-ris*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>habē-ur</td>
<td>habēba-ur</td>
<td>habēbit-ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td>habēmu-r</td>
<td>habēba-mu-r</td>
<td>habēbi-mu-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>habē-mini</td>
<td>habēba-mini</td>
<td>habēbi-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>habent-ur</td>
<td>habēbant-ur</td>
<td>habēbunt-ur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Note that in this form (2nd Pers. Sing. Fut.) there is a further change of i into e, as in the 1st Conj.: habēbi-s becomes habēbe-ris.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE.</th>
<th>IMPERATIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>habēr!</td>
<td>Not yet learned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24. [Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active, 2nd Conj.]
2. dēlēv-it, ‘destroyed,’ from dēleō. Contrast spectāv-i, -isti, -it, etc.
3. con-stat, lit. ‘stands’ or ‘is fixed’; hence ‘is known.’
5. habē-ur, ‘is held.’ Habeō may mean ‘I hold’ as well as ‘I have.’
6. Aqua haerēbat, ‘the water was sticking,’ means ‘the clock stopped’ or ‘there was a hitch.’ The Romans used water clocks, time being measured by the water running out. habu-imus, ‘we had.’
9. in manibus habu-erat, ‘had had in her hands’ = ‘had been reading.’
13. rēvērā insula, ‘really an island.’ The so called ‘Isle of Thanet’ is now part of the mainland.
15. duo tantum vel tria mília passuum, ‘only two or three miles (lit. thousands of paces).’ The Latin for ‘a mile’ is mille passūs (lit: a thousand paces), and for ‘miles’ is mília passuum, which was sometimes shortened to mília alone, whence comes our word ‘mile’ and the French mille.
17. habu-śrunt, ‘had’ or ‘got.’ ris-imus, ‘laughed,’ from rideō, § 22, l. 11.
26. Germanica. The German words are Angel ‘angle,’ and vante ‘corner,’ ‘edge.’ The vir doctus of l. 18 is Dr. John Evans.
PREPARATIONS

It will be seen that the Perfect Stem Active of the 2nd Conjugation may be formed in several different ways:

1. It may end in ev--; thus dēlēv- from dēleō, which is like spectāv- from spectō. But this way is not common in the 2nd Conj.

2. It may end in u--; thus habu- from habeō. This is the commonest way.

3. It may end in s--; thus rīs- from rideō (the d being dropped).

4. It may be formed without any suffix; thus respond- from respondēō (§ 25, l. 4).

Second Conjugation—Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PERFECT.</th>
<th>PLUPERFECT.</th>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S.</td>
<td>habu-I</td>
<td>habu-eram</td>
<td>habu-erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habu-istī</td>
<td>habu-erās</td>
<td>habu-eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habu-it</td>
<td>habu-erat</td>
<td>habu-erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td>habu-imus</td>
<td>habu-erāmus</td>
<td>habu-erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habu-istis</td>
<td>habu-erātis</td>
<td>habu-eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>habu-ērunt</td>
<td>habu-erant</td>
<td>habu-erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.**

habu-isse

Similarly conjugate dēlēv-I, -istī, -it, etc.; rīs-I, -istī, -it, etc.; respond-I, -istī, -it, etc.

† 25. 4. aqua haec-it (from haereō, § 24, l. 6), 'the clock stopped.' respond-imus, 'answered,' 'replied,' from respondēō, § 22, l. 7.

5. ab-hinc annōs duōs, lit. 'from-hence two years' = 'two years ago.' saecula tredecim fuerant, 'there had been thirteen centuries' = 'thirteen centuries had elapsed.'

6. ex quō = ex quo tempore, 'from what time,' 'since.'

11. Augustinum . . . docère iuss-erat (from iubēō, § 23, l. 28), 'had bidden Augustine to teach.' nōtītiam depends on docère.

16. Duroverni (Locative), in capite, 'at Canterbury, in the capital' = 'at Canterbury, the capital,' without 'in.'

17. praebu-it (= prae-hibu-it), 'provided,' from praebēō (= prae-hibēō), § 23, l. 21. domum, 'a home,' from domus (fem.).
26. 1. ante-quam, lit. ‘before than’ or ‘earlier than,’ = ‘before the time when’ or simply ‘before.’ But this ‘before,’ which is followed by a Verb in a Subordinate Clause (praebuit) must be distinguished from the Preposition ‘before,’ which in Latin is ante: cp. ante finem, § 1, l. 3. See note on post-quam and post, § 2, l. 1. Ante-quam and post-quam join on a little sentence which forms part of a larger sentence, and are therefore called Subordinating ‘Conjunctions’: cp. note at end of § 20.

10. in hunc modum; cp. § 13, l. 1.

16. pro-hibeō vōs manēre, ‘I shall forbid you to remain,’ like Augustinum docēre tusserat, § 25, l. 10, 11. Pro-hibeō is a compound of habeō, lit. ‘I for-hold’ (‘I hold away,’ cp. ‘for-bid’); quite different from praebēō. Prohibēō often takes the Infin.

27. [Perf. and Pluperfects Passive of the 1st or 2nd Conj.]

5. aedificātīae erant, ‘had been built.’ The literal translation is ‘were (erant) built (aedificātīae).’ but this would not give the meaning in English; for it would naturally mean ‘used to be built,’ which would be aedificābantur in Latin. Aedificātīae erant means ‘were already built,’ just as we might say ‘My letter was written before yours arrived’; here ‘was written = ‘had been written.’ Notice, then, that English phrases like ‘was written,’ ‘were built,’ etc., may be used in two different senses, which in Latin are expressed by two different tenses (the Pluperfect and the Past Imperfect).

Dubris, ‘at Dover’; Locative Case of Dubrae. The Locative of a Plural Name like Dubrae or Rutupiae is the same in form as the Ablative. Contrast Virocōnii, Dēvæ, etc. (§ 5, l. 22) and Callēvæ below (l. 6).

6. vid-istis and vid-i are Perf. Act. of videō. The Pronouns vōs and ego are put in because they are emphatic: ‘you have seen at Dover and I at Silchester.’

9. dēportātus est, ‘was carried-off.’ Note the translation ‘was carried-off,’ where the Latin is literally ‘is carried-off.’ But the English ‘is carried-off’ would naturally mean ‘is generally carried-off,’ which would be in Latin deportātur (Present Tense); so we use ‘was’ in such cases. With the whole sentence compare the Active construction in § 5, l. 25 and 26.

12. accuseda est, ‘she was accused,’ lit. ‘she is accused.’

13. Pompōniae Graecinae; compare § 21, l. 7, and § 23, l. 2.

15. dēlēv-erant, ‘they had destroyed’; cp. dēlēv-it, § 24, l. 2.

17. dēlēta erat, ‘had been destroyed’; here we might say ‘was destroyed.’ For the Adj. dēlētus, a, um, see § 22, l. 19.
19. *tenentēs*, ‘holding,’ and *cantantēs*, ‘singing,’ are Active Adjectives formed from the Verbs *teneō* and *cantō*. The vowel before the *-nt* is *e* when the Adjective comes from a Verb of the 2nd Conjugation, *a* when it comes from a Verb of the 1st Conjugation.

20. *ā domō tuā sanctā*, ‘from Thy holy house’; *domō* is the Ablative of the Feminine Noun *domus*, which belongs partly to the 2nd, but mainly to the 4th Decl., and which has a Locative Case (‘*ā domō*’ ‘at home’).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N., V.</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domūs (2nd decl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domūm</td>
<td>domūm (4th) or domōrum (2nd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domō (2nd decl.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc.</td>
<td>domī (2nd decl.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Formation of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice.**

These Tenses are formed by means of the Passive Adjective and the Verb ‘to be,’ as in English; but the tense of the Verb ‘to be’ is generally different in the two languages.

**Perfect:** Passive Adj. + *sum*; English, ‘I have-been ——,’ or ‘I was ——’: thus *aedificātae sunt*, ‘they have-been built,’ or ‘they were built’ (lit. ‘they are built’); *dēlēta est*, ‘it has-been destroyed,’ or ‘it was destroyed’ (lit. ‘it is destroyed’).

**Pluperfect:** Passive Adj. + *eram*; English, ‘I had-been ——’; thus *aedificātae erant*, ‘they had-been built’ (lit. ‘they were built’); *dēlēta erat*, ‘it had-been destroyed’ (lit. ‘it was destroyed’).

**Future Perf.** Passive Adj. + *ērō*; English, ‘I shall have been ——’; thus *aedificātae erunt*, ‘they will-have-been built’ (lit. ‘they will be built’); *dēlēta erit*, ‘it will have been destroyed’ (lit. ‘it will be destroyed’).

Notice that the Passive Adjective must agree in Gender and Number, and the Verb ‘to be’ in Number and Person, with the Noun of which it is said; thus, *Pompōnia Graecīna accusātā est*; *basilīcae aedificātae sunt*.

[The above rules apply to all four Conjugations.]
28. [Nouns of the 5th Declension.]

3. misericordiā com-mōv-erat, 'had moved with pity.'
4. multīs annīs ante; cp. paucīs annīs ante, § 20, l. 15.
5. faciē pulchrā, 'with (or of) handsome face (or appearance),' cp. § 2, l. 14.
6. com-mōtus est, 'he was moved,' Perf. Pass.
7. quōrum in manū, 'in whose possession (lit. hand),'
11. hūius faciēl, 'of this appearance.' The Gen. has here the same meaning as the Abl. in l. 5.
13. faciēs, 'face,' 'appearance'; Nom. Sing.
14. quōs . . . habet, 'whom the King of Darkness (=the Devil) has as ministers (or servants).' These are the words of Gregory, as reported by the Venerable Bede. The phrase Rex Tenebrārum could not have been used by a classical Latin writer in this sense.
16. eōs esse, 'them to be' = 'that they were'; cp. § 2, l. 10.
17. angelicam faciem, 'an angelic face (or appearance).'</n18. eōs vocāri oportet, 'they ought to be called,' lit. 'it behoves them to be called.' Oportet can only be used in the 3rd Pers. Sing.; cp. piget, § 22, l. 8.
22. ad fidem, 'to the faith'; from fidēs. The word is here used in a specially Christian sense; in classical Latin it means 'loyalty' or 'allegiance.'
25. diēs, 'the day'; Nom. Sing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom., Voc.</th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>faciēs</td>
<td>faciēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>faciem</td>
<td>faciērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>faciēl</td>
<td>faciērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>faciēl</td>
<td>faciēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>faciē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rule of Gender.—All Nouns of the 5th Declension are Feminine, except diēs, which is generally Masculine (though sometimes Feminine in the Singular Number).
PREPARATIONS 83

† 29. 1. diei (5th Decl.) illius belli, 'of that jolly day.'

3. vehiculum paratum erat, 'the carriage was prepared (or was ready).’ Here we have an excellent example to show how the Pluperf. Pass. may sometimes be translated literally by 'was —': but here too it may be translated 'had-been-prepared.'

6. domi, Locative; see on § 27, l. 20. longō die; Abl. by.'

9. mans-, from maneō (§ 26, l. 16), as ris-, from rideō.

† 30. 1. post Ídus, 'after the Ides.' The Ides of September, as of most months of the Roman year, fell on the 13th. But—

In March, July, October, May
The Ides were on the fifteenth day.

2. ēlapsi sunt, 'are elapsed,'= 'have slipped away'; cp. § 1, l. 2. āter, 'black.' The Romans called unlucky days 'black days.'

5. verbum 'valē' = the word 'goodbye'; valē, lit. 'be well,' or 'fare-well,' from valeō; like salvē, 'be safe and sound,' from salveō (§ 22, l. 5). But salvē came to be used for 'how do you do?' and valē for 'good-bye' (which = God be with you).

7. valēre iubēbō; cp. § 23, II. 27, 28, custōdem valēre iubēmus.

8. māne is properly an Abl. Case = 'in the morning'; thus ā māne is lit. 'from in-the-morning,' but may be translated simply 'from the morning'; cp. the phrase māne erat, lit. 'it was in-the-morning' = 'it was morning.'

9. diēs fēriāti, 'holi-days,' i.e. holy days; days of festivals (fēriae). diēs profesti, 'working-days'; pro-festus is the opposite of festus or fēriātus, 'festal.'

10, 11. An imitation of two well-known lines of Ovid [Fasti i. 47 and 50]. Line 11 means 'And the day, which will be a holiday, was in the morning a working-day' — a description of a half-holiday. In l. 10, silent-ur (Passive of silent, from sileō) almost = 'are silenced.'

The metre is 'dactylic,' as in Coleridge's lines:

'In the hexameter rises the fountain's silvery column;
In the pentameter aye falling in melody back.

12. trēs rēs, 'three things,' 'three realities'; Nom. Plur. of the important Noun rēs, 5th Decl. (whence Eng. 're-al').
PREPARATIONS

† 31. 2. *septem dies,* ‘for seven days.’ *Time how long is generally expressed in Latin by the Accusative without a Preposition, and often in English without ‘for.’ * _iam sum_, lit. ‘I am now’ = ‘I have now been and still am’; cp. in English—

> ‘Over the great restless ocean
> Six and twenty years _I roam._’

where the Present Tense—‘I have been and still am roaming.’

3. *ut valēs?* ‘how do you do?; lit. ‘how well are you?’

7. *te salūre iubet,* ‘sends you his kind regards’; cp. § 23, l. 28; § 30, l. 7. *quid novī,* lit. ‘anything of new’=‘anything new,’ ‘any news’: _novī_ is Gen. Sing. of the Neuter Adj. _novum,_ ‘a new thing.’ Latin is very fond of such Genitives where we in English do not generally say ‘of’: thus in O.M., § 30, _aliquantum temporis,_ ‘some time,’ lit. ‘a lot of time.’

10. _illic nātās,_ ‘produced (lit. born) there’; cp. ‘native oysters.’


17. *litterās dedit,* ‘has sent letters,’ lit. ‘has given letters.’

18, 19. *Ministrum nostrum qui Coloniīs praestī=‘our Secretary of State for the Colonies.’

21. _Respublicae,* ‘of the Republic,’ from _rēspūlicā._ This is really two words, (1) _rēs,_ the Noun of the 5th Decl., (2) _publica,_ an Adjective agreeing with it. Both together =‘commonwealth,’ or ‘re-public.’ In declining the word, both parts must be changed: thus—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL *</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēspūlicā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rēspūbicām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rēspūlicae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēspūlicās</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The Plural means ‘commonwealths’ or ‘republics,’ and should not be translated ‘public affairs.’
PREPARATIONS

32. [3rd Conjugation, Present, Active and Passive.]

1. quaesō, 'I ask'; often used like 'please' (= please tell me). Carefully note the endings of the Verbs in black print below, and compare them with the endings of the 1st and 2nd Conj. The 3rd is the most difficult of the Conjugations, and will require special attention.

2. longum est dicère, 'it is a long story (lit. a long-thing) to tell': dicère is the Present Infinitive of dicō; note that the e before the r is short, whereas in the 2nd Conj. it is long.

4. cultivan, 'cultivate,' 'till'; in-cultum (l. 6), 'inhabit.'

6. disputātur, 'it is being disputed' = 'the dispute is.'

7. ab hoc ad illum, 'from the latter to the former.'

8. per, 'for,' lit. 'through' — another way of expressing time how long; cp. on § 31, l. 2. mittunt-ur, 'are being sent,' Passive of mittunt, 'they are sending,' from mittō, 'I send' (or 'I let-go'). For the Present Tense with iam see on § 31, l. 2.

9. aquam perdimus, 'we waste the water' = 'we are losing time'; see note on the water-clock, § 24, l. 6. Per-dō is a Compound of per and dō: note that nearly all the Compounds of dō (and they are many) belong to the 3rd Conj. Dō itself belongs to the 1st Conj., and has the Infin. dāre; but observe that the a is short (unlike any other Verb of the 1st Conj.). Two Compounds of dō which have the Infinitive -dāre (not -dēre) are circum-dō and vēnum-dō. currīt hōra, 'time flies,' lit. 'the hour is running.'

11. ad-mittō, 'I admit'; lit. 'I let-go to,' 'I let in.'

12. rē vērā, Abl. of rēs vēra, 'a true thing'; hence 'in truth,' 'in reality,' 'really.' Sometimes written as one word (§ 24, l. 13).

17. ad-mittī, 'to be admitted,' 'to be let in'; Pres. Infin. Pass. of admissō. Note the peculiar way in which the Passive Infinitive is formed in this Conjugation:—

1st Conj. .. Active -āre, Passive -āri
2nd Conj. .. Active -ēre, Passive -ēri
3rd Conj. .. Active -ēre, Passive -i (not -ēri).

oponet eōs admissī; cp. § 28, l. 18, oportet eōs vocāri Angelōs.

18, 19. nōs ad-mittimus, 'we admit.'

20. vestram, 'your' = 'of you Boers.'
### Third Conjugation—Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.</th>
<th>ACTIVE.</th>
<th>PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mittō</td>
<td>mitto-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mittis</td>
<td>mitte-ris *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mittit</td>
<td>mittit-ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mittimus</td>
<td>mittimu-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mittitis</td>
<td>mitti-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mittunt</td>
<td>mittunt-ur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Note the change of ā into e, which in this Conjugation appears in the Present Tense Passive. In the 1st and 2nd Conj. it came only in the Future.

### INFINITIVE ACTIVE. | INFINITIVE PASSIVE.
---|---
mitter | mitti

### 33. [3rd Conjugation, Past Imperfect, Active and Passive.]


12. *dividēbat-ur*, 'was divided'; cp. *dividēt-ur* in l. 13.

15. *incolēbant-ur*, 'were inhabited,' 'used to be inhabited'; cp. § 32, l. 6.


18. *eōs fuisse dīcit*, 'declares them to have been' = 'says that they were'; cp. § 2, l. 10, and § 28, l. 16.

It will be seen that the Past Imperfect Tense has the same endings in the 3rd as in the 2nd Conjugation.

### Third Conjugation—Past Imperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.</th>
<th>ACTIVE.</th>
<th>PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mittēbam</td>
<td>mittēba-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mittēbās</td>
<td>mittēbā-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mittēbat</td>
<td>mittēbāt-ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mittēbāmus</td>
<td>mittēbāmu-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mittēbātis</td>
<td>mittēbā-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mittēbant</td>
<td>mittēbant-ur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
34. 1, 2. manēbat . . . insigne, 'their honour and the badge of their ancient union remained.' insigne, perhaps a flag.

4. legitē, 'read'; Imperative Plural of legō, 'I read.'

11. in-fundēbant-ur, lit. 'were poured in' = 'poured themselves in.'

15. Germānicā originē, like Celtīcā originē, § 21, l. 3.

16. The Belgae of Britain had come over from Belgium.

18. et nōs et illī, 'both we and they.'

19. nōmen Germānōrum, 'the name of Germans' = 'the name Germans.'

Third Conjugation—Imperative Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. 2</th>
<th>mitte</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P. 2</td>
<td>mittite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† 35. 7. con-ādērunt, 'they founded,' lit. 'put together,' from con-ādō. But dedērunt has been changed into -ādērunt, and the Compound Verb has become 3rd Conj.; cp. on § 32, l. 9 (per-dimūs from per-dāmus).

8. ex quō tempore, 'since which time'; cp. ex quō, § 25, l. 6.

13. quā ex rē = ex quā rē. sibi sūmunt, 'they take to themselves,' 'they give themselves.'

14. sē posse, 'themselves to be able,' depending on dicunt. Britānnōs vincere, 'to conquer the Britons,' depending on possē; cp. Britānnōs vincere possēmus, 'we are able to defeat the Britons,' where vincere depends on possēmus.

17. novīs rēbus student, 'they are bent on revolution (lit. new things)'; the verb studeō takes the Dative Case: lit. 'I am eager for' = 'I am bent on.'

18. quan-dam, 'a certain'; Acc. Sing. Fem. of qui-dam, quae-dam, quod-dam, in which only the first part is declined. Note that qui-, quae-, quod- does not here mean 'who' or 'which,' but rather 'something.'

23. ob-tīnēre is a Compound of ob and tīnēre, lit. 'to hold against': hence 'to re-tain,' 'to main-tain'; not 'to ob-tain,' though that word is derived from ob-tīnēre.

24. con-ditum, 'founded,' agreeing with imperium; it is the Passive Adjective from con-ādō, but dātus has become -dītus.

G
36. [3rd Conjugation, Future, Active and Passive.]

1, 2. magnum periculum esse dicit, 'declares a great danger to exist,' or 'declares the danger to be great'; cp. §28, l. 16.

4. con-scribere muntiantur, 'are reported to be enrolling.'

6. mulō plur-ēs, 'far more-men,' lit. 'more by much': cp. the Abl. in multis annis ante, 'many years before,' §28, l. 4. Plur-ēs is the Plural of plur.

7. coloniae defendendae causā, 'for the sake of defending the colony,' lit. 'of the colony to-be-defended'; compare proelii spectandī causā, §9, l. 23. Note the Adj. in -endus, a, um = -andus, a, um in the 1st Conj.

9. dūcent, 'shall lead'; from dūcō, §33, l. 6.

9, 10. prohibēbit eōs per-currere, 'will prevent them from overrun,' lit. 'will prevent them to overrun.' The Infinitive is used as in §26, l. 16, prohibēbō vōs manēre, 'I will forbid you to remain.'

12. mittēt-ur, 'will be sent,' from mittō.

14. rōbur et aēs triplex, 'oak and triple brass,' a quotation from Horace, here applied to British ironclads, as in O.M. §41.

15. defendet, 'will defend,' from dēfendō.

16. vincēmus, 'we shall conquer,' from vincō, §35, l. 14.

19. mittet, 'will send.' sēribet, 'he will write.'

20. mittam, 'I shall send.' leget, 'he will read.'

21. col-ligam, 'I shall col-lect.' ex-sēribam, 'I shall write out.'

Third Conjugation—Future Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ACTIVE.</th>
<th>PASSIVE (Rule, §17)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mittam</td>
<td>mitta-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mittēs</td>
<td>mittē-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mittet</td>
<td>mittēt-ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mittēmus</td>
<td>mittēmu-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mittētis</td>
<td>mittē-min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mittent</td>
<td>mittent-ur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the endings in this Tense are quite different from those of the Future in the 1st and 2nd Conjugations.
37. [Tenses from the *Perfect Stem Active, 3rd Conjug.*]

1. *Si valēs,* etc. ‘If you are well, it is well; I am well’—the regular way of beginning a letter in Latin, like the English ‘I hope you are quite well.’

2. *aliquit novī,* ‘something new,’ like *quid novī,* § 31, l. 7. Understand *est,* ‘there is.’ The Greek proverb is mentioned by the Latin writer Pliny (*Historia Naturalis,* viii. ch. 17, § 42).

4. *litterās ultimās,* ‘a final letter (or despatch),’ ‘an ultimatum.’ *mis-erunt,* ‘they have sent,’ from *mittō.*

5. *in-dix-erunt,* ‘they have declared,’ from *in-āicō.* *nōbis* (l. 4), ‘upon us.’

7. *dē-dux-erimus,* ‘we shall have with-drawn,’ from *dē-ducō.* *audāciam.* The Accusative is often found in Exclamations without a Verb; cp. O.M. § 2, ὅ beātās fēriās!

10. *mātōr-ēs,* ‘greater,’ agreeing with *cōpiās* understood.

13. *virōrum,* ‘of men,’ after *mīlia*; cp. § 9, ll. 12 and 21; § 24, l. 15.

16. *prō-mis-it,* ‘has promised,’ from *prō-mittō,* lit. ‘I let-go forth.’

20. *scrips-I,* ‘I have written,’ from *scribō.*

It will be seen that some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation form the Perfect Stem Active by adding an *-s:* thus, *scrib-* , *scrips-* (the *b* being turned into a *p*); *dīc-* , *dix-* (*dīcσ-*) ; *mitt-* , *mis-* (the *tt* being dropped before the *s*). These are like *mans-* , *rīs-* , etc., in the 2nd Conjugation.

### Third Conjugation—Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.</th>
<th>PERFECT.</th>
<th>PLUPERFECT.</th>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><em>mis-I</em></td>
<td><em>mis-eram</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><em>mis-istī</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erās</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erīs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><em>mis-it</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erat</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erit</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td><em>mis-imus</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erāmus</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erimus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><em>mis-istis</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erātis</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erītis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><em>mis-ērunt</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erant</em></td>
<td><em>mis-erint</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.**

*mīs-isse*
PREPARATIONS

88. (Note.) Idibus, 'on the Ides,' Abl. of Time when. A letter generally takes about eighteen days to travel from the Cape to England. red-ditae, Passive Adj. from red-dō.

2. horrida terra is in apposition to Africa. (The metre is dactylic; see on § 30, l. 10.)

3. poētae antiqui, Ennius (born in the third century B.C.).
   lēg-istī, 'have you read,' from legō, § 34, l. 4.

4. vic-imus, 'we have conquered,' from vincō.

5. dēfend-imus, 'we have defended,' from dēfendō. ut,
   'so far as.'

6. The thirteenth day before the 1st of November is October 20th, if we count in the 1st of November itself. The Roman months had the same number of days in them as ours.

7. ad, 'at' or 'near'—a meaning very like that of the Locative Case of Names of Towns.

9. col-lēg-erant, 'had collected,' from col-ligō, § 36, l. 21.

10. prō-curr-erunt, 'ran forward,' 'advanced at a run,' from prō-currō; cp. currīt hōra, § 32, l. 9.


11, 12. lēgātus Britannicus: General Sir W. Penn Symons. vulnerātus, an Adjective to lēgātus Britannicus. Cp. ante oculōs principis collocātus, § 6, l. 11. Similarly in l. 15 below situm is an Adjective to Saltum Cervinum.

14. For Saltus Cervinus, Castra Mariāna, etc., see Vocab.

16. nostrī (Nom. Plur. Masc. of noster) = 'our-men,' lit. 'ours.'

17. cohortēs, here 'battalions' (of the British army).

19. ascend-ērunt, 'ascended,' from ascendō.

21. ā-mīs-ērunt, 'lost,' from ā-mittō ('I let-go away').

23. scribē, Imperative Singular of scribō; see § 34 (end).

24. This letter from Cape Colony (Colōnia, l. 23) was written on Oct. 26—five days after the battle of Elandslaagte.

It will be seen that some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation form the Perfect Stem Active without any suffix: this is specially the case with stems ending in nd, like dēfend-, ascend-. Indeed all Verbs with stems in nd-, to whatever Conjugation they belong, form the Perfect Stem without any suffix (for instance, in the 2nd Conj., respondeō, Perf. Stem respond-).
Some of these Verbs, however, prefix a syllable to the Perfect Stem: thus curr-, cucurr-; pell-, pepul-. This extra syllable is called the ‘Reduplication’ (= doubling).

Others of these Verbs change the Stem of the Present in some other way; thus, lēg- (‘read’), lēg-; col-lēg- (‘collect’), col-lēg-; vinc-, vic- (here a letter is dropped).

There are other ways in which the Perfect Stem may be formed; instances will occur in the following sections.

39. [Prefects and Pluperfects Passive of the 3rd Conj.]
1. S.V.B.E.E.V. See beginning of the letter in § 37.
5. re-ductae sunt, ‘have been led back,’ from re-dūcō.
6. col-lectae, ‘collected,’ from col-lēgō. diē trīcēsimō, ‘on the 30th.’ This way of expressing dates in Latin is far more convenient than the old Latin way (cp. § 37, l. 20; § 38, l. 6), and is generally used in Latin letters written at the present day; for instance, letters sent by Universities and intended to be read all over the world. It will be employed in the rest of this story; except when a date falls exactly on the ‘Kalends’ or ‘Nones’ or ‘Ides’ of a month, or on the day immediately preceding or following one of these dates (for example, l. 22 below).
7. com-missum est, ‘was fought,’ ‘was engaged-in,’ from com-mittō, ‘I let-go together.’ The Passive Adj. commissum agrees with proelium.
10. in ipsō tempore, ‘at the time itself,’ ‘at the very time,’ ‘in the nick of time.’
11. auxiliō fuērunt, ‘were for an aid,’ ‘served as an aid’; cp. on āsū erat, § 23, l. 17.
14. missae erant, ‘had been sent,’ from mittō.
19. sē esse vidērunt, ‘they saw themselves to be’; sē is the Accusative before the Infinitive esse; like eum before reportā-visse in § 2, l. 10.
20. circum-dati erant, ‘they had been surrounded,’ from circum-dō, 1st Conjugation; see note on § 32, l. 9.
21. co-actī sunt, ‘were driven (= compelled),’ from cōgō = co-agō.
40. [4th Conjugation, Present, Active and Passive.]

2. audimus, ‘hear,’ with nōs puerī; from audīō.  
veniunt, ‘come,’ from venīō.

4. custōdiunt-ur, ‘are kept,’ from custōdiō.

5. audire, ‘to hear,’ Infinitive.

6. venit, ‘comes.’ The Present Tense is here used with the sense of a Past (‘came’), as so often in narrative; cp. inquit, ‘he says’ = ‘he said.’

7. audite, ‘hear,’ Imperative Plural.  
quod = id quod, ‘that which,’ ‘what.’

8. lēg-i, from legō, 3rd Conj.; Perfect Stem formed by lengthening the vowel.

9. custōdiunt, ‘are guarding.’

10. mūniere, ‘to fortify,’ from mūniō.


It will be seen that the Present Tense of Verbs of the 4th Conjugation differs from that of the 1st and 2nd Conjugations only in having an i instead of an a or an e in the endings; cp. § 22 (end).

Fourth Conjugation—Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ACTIVE.</th>
<th>PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 1</td>
<td>audīō</td>
<td>audio-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audī-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audit-ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 1</td>
<td>audimus</td>
<td>audīmu-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>auditis</td>
<td>audī-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>audiunt</td>
<td>audiunt-ur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE ACTIVE.</th>
<th>INFINITIVE PASSIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audire</td>
<td>audīre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.</th>
<th>IMPERATIVE PASSIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 2 audī</td>
<td>Not yet learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 2 audīte</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
41. [4th Conjug., Past Imperf. and Future, Active and Passive.]

3. veniēbant, 'were coming,' 'kept coming,' from veniō.
4. enim -nam; but it always stands after some other word in the sentence.
5. audiēbāmus, 'we heard,' 'we kept hearing'; on this Verb depends the Accusative with Infinitive (Batāvōs parāre).
6. mūnlēbant, 'they were fortifying,' from mūniō.
7. nesciēbāmus, 'we did not know,' from nesciō, a Compound of ne-, 'not,' and scīō, 'I know' (whence scīmus, l. 8).
10. ad-veniet, 'will it arrive,' from ad-veniō (lit. 'come to').
12. audiēmus, 'shall we hear,' from audiō.
13. custōdīet, 'will guard,' from custōdiō.
16. pugnābitur, lit. 'it will be fought' = 'the war will be fought.' A 3rd Person. Singular of the Passive Voice is often used without any Noun in the Nominative Case to which it belongs. A Noun of similar meaning to the Verb is understood; thus here pugnābitur, 'it will be fought,' means 'the fight will be fought.' The nearest thing in English to this Passive construction with a vague subject is the Active 'it rains' = 'the rain rains'; 'it thundered and lightened' = 'the thunder thundered and the lightning lightened.'—Cp. § 32, l. 6.

It will be seen that the i of the 4th Conjugation Verbs is retained—

(1) before ēbam, ēbās, ēbat, etc., in the Past Imperfect Tense. Otherwise this Tense is the same as in the 2nd and 3rd Conjugations.

(2) before am, ēs, et, etc., in the Future Tense. Otherwise this Tense is the same as in the 3rd Conjugation.

### Fourth Conjugation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Past Imperfect.</th>
<th>Future.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>** ACTIVE.</td>
<td>** PASSIVE (§ 17).</td>
<td>** ACTIVE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 1</td>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audiēba-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbā-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbāt-ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 1</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
<td>audiēbāmu-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
<td>audiēbā-minī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
<td>audiēbant-ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
42. [Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active, 4th Conjugation.]

4. audīv-imus, 'we have heard,' from audīō.

6. ad-vēn-it, 'it arrived,' from ad-venīō, § 41, l. 10.

10. audīv-ērunt, 'heard' or 'have heard.' vocant-em, 'calling,' Accusative of the Active Adjective formed from the Verb vocō, 'I call'; 'heard the country calling' = 'heard their country's call'; cp. § 12, ll. 20, 21.

11. pridiē, 'on the day before,' may take an Accusative (Kalendās).

13. custōdīv-ērunt, 'have guarded,' from custōdiō, § 40, ll. 4, 9.

mūnīrī, Infinitive, Passive of mūnīre, § 40, l. 10.

14. mūnīlv-ērunt, 'they have fortified.'

16. com-missum, Passive Adjective from com-mittō (§ 39, l. 7), agreeing with proelium (translate 'for the battle fought in front of the town'); cp. § 5, ll. 12, 13; § 15, l. 4.

It will be seen that the Perfect Stem Active of most Verbs of the 4th Conjugation is formed in the same way as that of spectō (1st Conj.) and deleō (2nd Conj.); cp. spectāv-, délēv-, audīv-. The only difference is that in the 4th Conjugation the vowel before the v is i.

But there are some Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which do not form the Perfect Stem in this way; for instance, veniō forms vēn-, without any suffix; cp. legō, lēg- (3rd Conj.).

Note that in no Conjugation do all verbs form the Perfect Stem in the same way: even in the 1st Conjugation, which is far the simplest, we have dō, ded- and stō, stet-.

Fourth Conjugation—Tenses formed from the Perfect Stem Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. 1</th>
<th>PERFECT.</th>
<th>PLUPERFECT.</th>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>audīv-I</td>
<td>audīv-erām</td>
<td>audīv-erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>audīv-istī</td>
<td>audīv-erās</td>
<td>audīv-erls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīv-it</td>
<td>audīv-erāt</td>
<td>audīv-erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>audīv-imus</td>
<td>audīv-erāmus</td>
<td>audīv-erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>audīv-istīs</td>
<td>audīv-erātis</td>
<td>audīv-eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīv-ērunt</td>
<td>audīv-erānt</td>
<td>audīv-erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P. 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE

audīv-isse

Similarly conjugate vēn-I, -istī, -it, etc.
PREPARATIONS

43. [Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in ère, Present, Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

3. ac-cipiēs, with tū, 'you will re-cieve'; from ac-cipiō, a Compound of ad and capīō ('I take to myself,' ‘I ac-cept,' 'I re-cieve').

5. audīv-eris, 'you will have heard,' Future Perfect of audiō. 
   cupīēbam, 'I desired,' 'I wanted,' from cupīō. Note the Past Imperfect Tense, which is here used just as we might use the Past Tense in a similar passage of an English letter. In a similar way we have scribēbam in l. 2 and poteram in l. 4.

6. nihil litterārum; cp. quid novē, § 31, l. 7; aliquid novi, § 37, l. 2.

8. faciētis, with tū et condiscipuli tuī, 'will do'; from faciō. 
   acsciēmus, 'we shall receive,' from accipiō.

9. capīmus, with nōs, 'we take,' here = 'we feel,' or 'we suffer'; from capiō; contrast audīmus from audiō.

11. capēre, 'to take,' from capiō; contrast audire, from audiō.
   cupiunt, 'they desire,' 'they want,' from cupiō.

12. capiēnt, 'they will take (it).' nociēs diēsque; see Vocab.

13. iaciēnt, 'they throw,' from iaciō (a different Verb from iaceō, § 22, l. 14).

14. faciēnt, 'they make'; facēre, 'to do'; both from faciō. 
   dē-ficiēt, 'is running short,' from dē-ficiō (a Compound of dē, 'away,' and faciō).

16. fodiēre, 'to dig,' from fodiō.

17. sē re cliēnt (a Compound of re-, 'back,' and capiō), 'they be-take themselves.'

18. inter-ficiēnt-ur, 'are killed,' from inter-ficiō (lit. 'I make away with').

It will be seen that Verbs like capiō, cupiō, faciō are conjugated in the Past Imperfect and Future Tenses exactly like audiō; that is, according to the 4th Conjugation. In the Present Tense the 1st Person Singular and the 3rd Person Plural are also according to the 4th Conjugation; and the other Persons of this Tense differ from the 4th Conjugation only in having a short i where the 4th Conjugation has a long i. But in the Infinitive these verbs have the endings of the 3rd Conjugation (Active, -ère, not -i-ære; Passive, -ī, not -i-īri). So too in the Imperative.
PREPARATIONS


**ACTIVE VOICE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.</th>
<th>PRESENT,</th>
<th>PAST IMPERFECT.</th>
<th>FUTURE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>capis *</td>
<td>capiēbas</td>
<td>capēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>capīt</td>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 1</td>
<td>capīmus *</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>capītis *</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>capient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. 2</th>
<th>IMPERATIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capē *</td>
<td>capēte *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PASSIVE VOICE.** (Rule § 17.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.</th>
<th>PRESENT.</th>
<th>PAST IMPERFECT.</th>
<th>FUTURE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>capio-r</td>
<td>capiēba-r</td>
<td>capia-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>capē-ris *</td>
<td>capiēba-ris</td>
<td>capē-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>capit-ur</td>
<td>capiēbāt-ur</td>
<td>capiēt-ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 1</td>
<td>capīmu-r *</td>
<td>capiēbāmu-r</td>
<td>capiēmu-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>capi-mini *</td>
<td>capiēbā-mini</td>
<td>capiē-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>capiunt-ur</td>
<td>capiēbant-ur</td>
<td>capiēnt-ur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. 2</th>
<th>IMPERATIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capi *</td>
<td>Not yet learned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44. [Perfect Stem Active of Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in -ēre.]

1. hōs, 'these' = 'the last.'

3. ae-cēp-imus, 'we have re-ceived,' from ac-cipiō.

8, 9. 'These the Dutch had settled-on, like eagles on their nests'; in-sēderant comes from in-sīdō, 3rd Conj. (which is derived from sedeō, 2nd Conj.).

* These forms are the same as in the 3rd Conjugation.
PREPARATIONS

11. fēc-ārunt, 'made,' from faciō. cēp-ārunt, 'took,' from capiō.

12. con-lēc-ārunt, 'threw,' from con-iciō (less correctly spelled con-iciō), which is a Compound of con and iaciō, § 43, l. 13.

15. in-cēp-ārunt, 'they began,' from in-iciō (lit. ' I take on').

17. fōd-erat, 'had dug,' from fodiō, § 43, l. 16.

19. pugnātum est, 'it was fought' = 'a battle was fought'; see note on pugnābitur, § 41, l. 16.

20, 22. inter-fēc-ārunt, 'killed,' from inter-iciō. sē trā-lēc-ārunt, 'threw themselves across' = 'crossed'; trā- = trans.

23. sē re-cēp-ārunt; cp. sē re-cēptiunt, § 43, l. 17.

The dates of the battles referred to are Nov. 23rd (Belmont), Nov. 25th (Graspan or Enslin), Nov. 28th (Modder River).

It will be seen that capiō, faciō, iaciō and fodiō form their Perfect Stems without any suffix, and with a lengthened vowel, cēp-, fēc-, iēc-, fōd-. Cupiō, on the other hand, forms the Perf. St. cupiū- (like audīv-, from audiō).

† 45. 5. lēgātus Britannicus, Lord Methuen.

7. sicut Britannis antiquīs, 'just-as to the ancient Britons.' Caesar tells us that the Britons were not accustomed to fight regular battles in the Roman style.

9, 10. Cp. O.M. § 37 (about the British charioteers).

11. vigintī tantum; cp. duo tantum vel tria, § 24, l. 14.

16. Batāvus, 'the Dutchman' = 'the Dutch general,' here Cronje.


† 46. 4. con-spicit-ur, 'is discerned,' from con-spiciō.

7. lēgātō, General Wauchope.

8. iacu-ērunt, from iaceō; contrast iēc-ērunt from iaciō.

11. perturbātī sunt, 'were thrown into disorder'; Perf. Pass. alius super alium, 'other over other' = 'one over the other.'

13, 14. ut poterant; cp. ut poterāmus, § 38, l. 5.

18, 19. alius exercitus, commanded by General Gatacre. The disaster of Stormberg occurred early on the morning of Dec. roth. ad; cp. § 38, l. 7.

21. eorum, neuter, 'of those things.'


PREPARATIONS

† 47. 5. imperātor noster; see § 42, l. 10, 11.
6. milia, in apposition to exercitus.
13. legiō, here ‘brigade’ (of the British army); see Vocab.
20. nostrōrum; cp. § 39, l. 13.

48. [Present Injunctive of ‘sum.’]

1. Ante paucōs diēs, ‘before a few days’ = ‘a few days ago.’ [Abhinc is not used with diēs.]
7. septem et sexāgintā annōs nātus, ‘born sixty-seven years’ = ‘sixty-seven years old.’
8. ad; cp. § 38, l. 7. ce-cid-it, from cadē.
9. fact. The Present Tense is often thus used after dum, instead of the Past Imperfect.
11. sit, ‘may there be.’
13. poëta Rōmānus: Plautus, in his play called ‘The Persian’ (iv. 4, 73).
14. ‘The Cape of Storms,’ so called by its first discoverer in 1486—a Portuguese named Diaz.
18. quantum, Accus. of quantus, which means ‘how great,’ but may be translated ‘as’ after tantus ‘so great’ (l. 17).
18, i. quod prō-sit, ‘may which-thing be helpful’ = ‘and may it be helpful.’ The verb prō-sum means literally ‘I am for,’ ‘I am on-the-side-of,’ and takes the Dative Case (reipublicae nostrae).

It will be seen that sit differs from est in the same way as ‘be’ differs from ‘is’ in English; cp. ‘it is so’ with ‘be it so’ or ‘so be it.’ Est and ‘is’ express a fact; sit and ‘be’ express a desire or command. They are therefore very like Imperatives in meaning. We may call them ‘Injunctives,’ understanding by that name a form of the verb which ‘enjoins’ or expresses an ‘injunction’; for an injunction is very much the same as a command.

Injunctive forms exist in all Persons, Singular and Plural, and in several different Tenses. The whole group of injunctive forms might be called an ‘Injunctive Mood’; just as the whole group of imperative forms is called the ‘Imperative Mood,’ and the whole group of forms which state facts is called the ‘Indicative (= indicating) Mood.’ But the Mood here called ‘Injunctive’ is commonly called ‘the Subjunctive Mood’ from a use of it explained below (§ 50).
Present Injunctive of 'sum.'

| S.  | 1 sim, | may I be |
| 2 sils, | may you be |
| 3 sit, | may he be |
| P.  | 1 simus, | may we be |
| 2 siltis, | may you be |
| 3 sint, | may they be |

The Present Injunctive of pos-sum is formed by adding the above forms to pos-: thus pos-sim, 'may I be able,' etc.

49. [Present Injunctive of the 1st Conjugation.]

2. nihil novī; cp. aliquīd novī, § 37, l. 2; and § 43, l. 6.

3. prope is here an Adverb; 'nearly,' 'almost.'

6. pugnēmus, 'let us fight'; cp. § 36, l. 15 f., etiam atque etiam pugnāvimus ('we shall fight'). The Injunctive is rather like a Future Indicative in meaning, though there is a difference. Think what is the exact meaning of 'We'll (= we will) fight and we'll conquer'; is it more like 'we shall fight' or 'let us fight'? vic-erimus is a Future Perfect Indicative, 'we shall have conquered.'

7. Deus det, 'may God give (or grant).' Nē despērēmus, 'let us not despair,' from despēro. Note that 'not' with Injunctives is nē (instead of nōn).

8. festinēmus lentē, 'let us hurry slowly,' 'steady, boys, steady!'; cp. Festinā (Imperative) lentē, 'hurry slowly,' 'not too fast!'; O.M. § 21. fecit, 'did' (= hurried slowly); the verb faciō is often used in Latin, like 'do' in English, to avoid repeating a verb.

9. poēta Rōmānus, Ennius; see § 38, l. 3 and l. 2.

10. cunctandō, 'by delaying,' the Ablative of a Noun in -ndum formed from a Verb; cp. spectandī (Gen.), § 6, l. 4, etc. nōbīs, 'for us' (Dative), with restituit. rem-rempublicam (§ 31, l. 21). Fabius Maximus was called Cunctātor, 'the Delayer,' because he avoided fighting the enemy in pitched battles; he thus saved the Roman Republic when it was nearly overthrown by Hannibal.
12. unius et maioris populi goes with corpus, 'the body of one and a greater nation.'

14, 15. Lines by Dr. J. E. Sandys, Public Orator in the University of Cambridge, on presenting the Hon. E. Barton, of New South Wales, for a Doctor's degree (May 10th, 1900). estō, l. 15, is an Imperative of sum, 3rd Pers. Sing., and means 'be' (which meaning might also be expressed by the Injunctive sit); estō foedus, 'be there a league,' or 'let there be a league.' omnis = totius, 'of the whole.'

The metre is 'trochaic,' like that of Tennyson's Locksley Hall:—

"Cômrades, leáve me hêre a little, | while as yêt 'tis éarly mórn."

17. cui, 'for which,' may here be translated 'on which' after occidit. From occidère, 'to set,' comes occidens, 'the setting' (properly 'the setting sun') = 'the West.'

18, 19. maximam laudem ... posse, 'judge it to be the greatest praise to themselves to be able to say.'

20, 21. Lines by Dr. Sandys (June 17, 1897); a translation of Rudyard Kipling's line—

"I am daughter in my mother's house, but mistress in my own."

The metre is trochaic, like the second half of the lines of Locksley Hall—"while as yêt 'tis éarly mórn."

22–26. The numbers here mentioned were largely increased afterwards.

25. nātū, from nātus, 4th Decl. See Vocab.

27. qui = ei qui, 'those who'; cp. quod = id quod, § 40, l. 7. In English, too, 'who' sometimes means 'he who'; thus, 'Who steals my purse, steals trash' (Shakspere, Othello). The metre of the line of Horace is dactyllic; cp. on § 30, l. 10.

29. Deus salvam prae-stet, 'may God render safe' = 'God save.' Notice that 'God save the Queen' may also be translated by an Imperative in Latin: Deus salvam fac (Imperative of faciō) Rēginam, lit. 'God make safe the Queen.' The English 'save' in 'God save' is an Injunctive.
PRESENTATIONS

Present Injunctive of the First Conjugation.

| S. | Pugnem, may I fight or let me fight |
| 1. | pugnēs, may you fight |
| 2. | pugnet, may he fight or let him fight |
| 3. | P. | Pugnēmus, may we fight or let us fight |
| 1. | pugnētis, may you fight |
| 2. | Pugnet, may they fight or let them fight |

From Active Injunctives may be formed Passives. Thus—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE.</th>
<th>PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 1</td>
<td>spectem, may I see, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>spectēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>spectet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 1</td>
<td>spectēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>spectētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>spectent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50. [Present Subjunctive of sum and 1st Conjugation.]

4. ut ... expungent, 'that they may storm,' depending on operam dant: notice ut = 'that'; hitherto we have had it only in the sense 'as' (which occurs also below, l. 14), or 'how.' vi, from vis, an irregular Noun; see Vocab.

5. quō ... dent, 'on which they may deliver,' depending on diem constituant. This Subordinate Clause introduced by quō is very like the independent sentence introduced by Quod in § 48, l. 18.

10. pugnātūr; cp. pugnābitur, § 41, l. 16, pugnātum est, § 44, l. 19.

The Present Tense in this passage (ll. 7–12) refers to past time.

11. ut sōl obscūrētūr, 'that the sun is darkened,' depending on tantus.

12. ut prōpulsent, 'that they repel,' depending on tam ācrem.

13. et (ut, understood) salva præsent, 'and (that) they render safe.'

17. victitant, 'they live'; 'they' = 'the inhabitants.'

18. lāc, 'milk,' which is so necessary for invalids.
19. dēnāriīs vigintī con-stant, lit. ‘stand at 20/-’ = ‘cost 20/-.’ For the Abl. in this sense, cp. O.M. § 9, magnō preliō vēnumdant.

22. ut . . . explōrent-ur, ‘that what is being done among the enemy may be investigated’: quae= ea quae, ‘those things which’; cp. § 49, l. 27, and contrast § 46, l. 21, eōrum quae apud nōs agēbantur.

25. ut spectent, ‘that (or in order that) they may see.’

25, 26. ita . . . ut . . . applicētur, ‘in such a way that it may be brought.’ si sit, ‘if it be.’

It will be seen that the ‘Subjunctives’ of this section do not differ in form from the ‘Injunctives’ of §§ 48, 49; that is, the same words (sim, sis, sit, etc., pugnem, pugnēs, pugnet, etc.) may be used either as ‘Injunctives’ or as ‘Subjunctives.’ The name Subjunctive is here given to an Injunctive when it stands in a Subordinate Clause.* But there is also a difference of meaning, which in some cases is important:

(1) Instead of ‘may I,’ ‘may you,’ ‘may he,’ etc., the Subjunctive is translated ‘I may,’ ‘you may,’ ‘he may,’ etc.

(2) In some cases the meaning ‘may’ seems to disappear altogether; see l. 11, obscuretur, ‘is darkened’; l. 12, prōpulsent, ‘they repel’; l. 13, praestent, ‘they render.’ [At first sight it is difficult to see why Subjunctives are used in these sentences at all; they seem not to differ in meaning from Indicatives. Perhaps applicētur in l. 26 may help to explain the difficulty; it means ‘may be brought,’ but it might be translated ‘is brought.’ Similarly ut prōpulsent (l. 12) means properly ‘as to repel,’ rather than ‘that they repel;’ ut sōl obscuretur (l. 11) is rather more difficult, because it is Passive, but we may translate ‘as for the sun to be darkened’; and this ‘for the sun to be darkened’ is not so very different from ‘that the sun may be darkened.’†

*The word ‘Sub-junctive’ in itself means nothing more than ‘sub-joining,’ as though the Subjunctive Mood were the Mood of sub-joined or sub-ordinate clauses. But it is best to understand it as short for ‘Sub-injunctive’; that is, ‘Subordinate Injunctive.’

†This attempt to explain the Subjunctive in Clauses denoting Result may be omitted, if too difficult of comprehension for the pupil. He will then have to regard the Subjunctive in such Clauses as having no special meaning, and as a merely formal substitute for the Indicative.
† 51. 3. imperātor novus, Lord Roberts; § 48, l. 2.
vincere scīt, ‘knows how to conquer,’ lit. ‘knows to conquer.’

4–14. The Present Tense refers to past time; cp. § 50, l. 7–12.
4. Calēdonēs, =‘Highland regiments.’
5, 6. qui dent, ‘who shall deliver’ =‘to deliver.’
6. equītum Anglōrum, etc: under General French.
7, 8. ut equītēnt, ‘that they shall ride’ =‘to ride.’
13. solitā densiōrem, ‘denser than usual.’ In this phrase the
Ablative of the Adjective solitus means ‘than.’
17. Salvi sītis! a common form of greeting, lit. ‘may you be
safe-and-sound!’ =‘good day to you.’
19, 20. ut liberēmus, ‘that (or in order that) we may set-free’
=‘to (or in order to) set-free.’ The proper English, however,
for the phrase oppidum obsidione liberāre (lit. ‘to set-free a town
from siege’) will be found in the Vocab. Deō sīt grātia,
‘thanks be to God,’ ‘thank God.’

22, 23. nōmine Adamantopolis (Gen.), ‘the name of A.;’
cp. nomen Germanōrum, § 34, l. 19. adamantha movēre, ‘to move
adamant,’ means to bend a thing that is inflexible. Adamanta is
the Greek Accusative of the Greek word adamas (adamant-).

It will be seen that Subjunctives and Injunctives may often be
translated by the word ‘shall’ in English; and ut or qui followed
by a Subjunctive may be conveniently translated by the Infinitive
with ‘to,’ or ‘in order to;’ see lines 4, 5, 6, 7, 19, 20 above.

52. [Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.]
2. liberātā, agreeing with Adamantopolī (Ablative).
4. nulla mora; that is, he is not a Cunctātor, like the Roman
Q. Fabius Maximus, § 49, l. 8. Noster =‘our general.’
5, 6. qui oppugnent, like qui dent, § 51, ll. 4, 5.
6–8. dum equītēs eum itinere prohībeant, ‘while the cavalry shall
prevent him from the march (=from marching).’ à septen-
triōnibus, ‘on the North.’
8. videāt imperātor noster, ‘let our general see-to-it.’
9, 10. nē . . . capiat, ‘that the State shall suffer no harm’;
nē here =ut nē, ‘that not’ or ‘lest;’ cp. the nē in § 49, l. 7;
nē despērēmus. quid dētrimentī; cp. quid novī, § 31, l. 7.
For capiō =‘suffer,’ see § 43, l. 9.
10. anxia, fem. of anxius; because ‘I’ is here a woman.

14. Deus avertat, ‘may God avert.’ prohibeat nē, literally ‘may he prevent that . . . not,’ or ‘may he prevent lest’: but the meaning is ‘God forbid that.’ It is a special idiom in Latin to use nē instead of ut after prohibeo, as though the Subordinate Clause were a separate sentence (Nē sit hic diēs āter, ‘let not this day be a black one’).

15, 16. Det ut vincāmus, ‘may he grant that we may conquer.’

16, 17. ut salūtem dicam, ‘that I send greeting,’ depending on rogat. 
us valēs, ‘that you be-well,’ depending on curā, ‘take care.’ Note that the Latin Subjunctive is here translated by an English Subjunctive, instead of by ‘may,’ ‘let,’ or ‘shall.’

It will be seen that the Present Injunctives of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conjugation have an a in the ending; whereas in the 1st Conjugation the Present Injunctive has an e.

**Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Voice.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd CONJ.</td>
<td>3rd CONJ.</td>
<td>4th CONJ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 1</td>
<td>habeam</td>
<td>mittam</td>
<td>audiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>habeās</td>
<td>mittās</td>
<td>audiās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>habeat</td>
<td>mittat</td>
<td>audiēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 1</td>
<td>habeāmus</td>
<td>mittāmus</td>
<td>audiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>habeātis</td>
<td>mittātis</td>
<td>audiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>habeant</td>
<td>mittant</td>
<td>audiānt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PASSIVE VOICE (Rule, § 17.).</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd CONJ.</td>
<td>3rd CONJ.</td>
<td>4th CONJ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 1</td>
<td>habeā-r</td>
<td>mittā-r</td>
<td>audiā-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>habeā-ris</td>
<td>mittā-ris</td>
<td>audiā-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>habeāt-ur</td>
<td>mittāt-ur</td>
<td>audiāt-ur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 1</td>
<td>habeāmu-r</td>
<td>mittāmu-r</td>
<td>audiāmu-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>habeā-minī</td>
<td>mittā-minī</td>
<td>audiā-minī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>habeant-ur</td>
<td>mittant-ur</td>
<td>audiānt-ur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in -ère (like capiō, capère) form the Present Injunctive according to the 4th Conjugation: capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.
PREPARATIONS

53. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of ‘sum.’]

4. vēnit, vidit, vicit, ‘came, saw and conquered.’ Vēnī, vidī, vīcī was what Caesar wrote in one of his despatches.

7. in quibus sui tūtī essent, ‘in which his-men should be safe’; cp. § 52, ll. 5, 6.

8. nē pos-set, ‘that he might not be able’; pos-set = pot-esset.

11–13. ita . . . ut . . . ab-essent, ‘in such a way that they should be distant’; cp. § 50, l. 25, 26, ita . . . ut . . . applicētur.

15, 16. salūtem dēspērāvit, ‘despaired-of deliverance’; see Vocab.

17. dē-didit, Perfect of dē-dō; cp. con-didērunt, § 35, l. 7. Diēs Maiūbensis, Feb. 27th; see § 52, l. 10.

18. Colōnia = Cape Colony, as in § 38, l. 23.

23. properandō, ‘by hastening,’ ‘by acting rapidly’; cp. § 49, l. 10.

It will be seen that the Past Imperfect Subjunctive differs from the Present Subjunctive just as ‘should’ differs from ‘shall,’ or ‘might’ from ‘may.’

**Past Imperfect Subjunctive of ‘sum.’**

| S. | I should be, or I might be |
| 1. essem, | you should be, or you might be |
| 2. essēs, | he should be, or he might be |
| 3. esset, | we should be, or we might be |
| P. | you should be, or you might be |
| 1. essēmus, | they should be, or they might be |
| 2. essētis, | |
| 3. essent, | |

The Past Imperfect Subjunctive of pos-sum is formed by adding -sem, -sēs, -set, -sēmus, -sētis, -sent to pos-.

54. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of the 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.]

2. Fabius ille noster, ‘that Fabius of ours,’ General Sir Redvers Buller.

3. ut liberāret, lit. ‘that he might set-free’ = ‘to set-free,’ depending on operam ābat (Past Imperfect); cp. § 50, l. 4, ut expugnent, depending on operam dat (Present). *bis*: in the neighbourhood of Spion Kop and of Vaalkrantz.
4. trā-iēcerat, ‘he had crossed’; much commoner than sē trā-iēcerat, ‘he had thrown himself across,’ § 44, l. 22. ut locō movēret, ‘that he might dislodge’ (lit. ‘move from the place’).

5. et (ut understood) facēret, ‘and might make.’

6. ut re-dūcēret, lit. ‘that he should lead back’ = ‘to lead back.’

Cōgō may also take the Infinitive in Latin, as in § 39, l. 21, coactī sunt sē dēedere.

9. ut paucī facile prohibērent, ‘that a few men easily prevented,’ depending on tam altōs, ‘so high’; we might translate ‘high enough for . . . to prevent.’

11, 12. ut . . . tolerārent, ‘as to endure.’

13. (ut understood) . . . ascendērent, ‘(as) to ascend.’

14. (ut understood) . . . capērent, ‘(as) to seize.’

. . . sus-tinērent, ‘(as) to sus-tain,’ ‘as to face.’

16. red-didit, Perfect of red-dō; like dē-didit, con-didit.

16, 17. ut omnēs hominēs . . . audīrent lūdicārentque, ‘so that all men heard . . . and judged.’

19. pro-fūd-isse, Perfect Infinitive of pro-fundō. ter, including the first attempt at the battle of Colenso, § 47.

20. ut . . . pellērent, ‘that they might drive,’ ‘to drive,’ depending on contenderant; cp. viam facere (Infin.) contendorunt, § 46, l. 14.

22. ut . . . pugnārent, ‘that they should fight’ = ‘to fight,’ depending on constituērunt, ‘they resolved.’ dōnec vincērunt, ‘until they should conquer.’

Past Imperfect Subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st CONJ.</th>
<th>2nd CONJ.</th>
<th>3rd CONJ.</th>
<th>4th CONJ.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 1</td>
<td>spectārem</td>
<td>habārem</td>
<td>mittārem</td>
<td>audīrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>spectārēs</td>
<td>habērēs</td>
<td>mittērēs</td>
<td>audĪrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>spectāret</td>
<td>habērēt</td>
<td>mittīrēt</td>
<td>audīret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. 1</td>
<td>spectārēmus</td>
<td>habērēmus</td>
<td>mittērēmus</td>
<td>audīrēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>spectārētis</td>
<td>habērētīs</td>
<td>mittērētīs</td>
<td>audīrētīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>spectārent</td>
<td>habērēnt</td>
<td>mittērēnt</td>
<td>audīrent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in -ēre (like capiō, capère) form the Past Imperfect Subjunctive according to the 3rd Conjugation: capērem, capērēs, capēret, etc. Contrast the Present Subjunctive of these Verbs (according to the 4th Conjugation, § 52, end).

† 55. 1, 2. alterō et vicēsimō, '2nd and 20th' = '22nd.'
14. ē diem pulchrum, 'oh the glorious day!'; cp. § 37, l. 7.
16. lux, 'light' = 'hope,' 'joy.' af-ful-s-it, 'shone,' 'dawned,' Perfect of af-fulgeō, which takes the Dative (oppidō illī, 'upon that town').
18. quō . . . essēmus; cp. in quibus essent, § 53, l. 7.
21. fabricāta, Passive Adj. from fabricō, agreeing with insignia.

† 56.* Pax Britannica; cp. Pax Rōmāna, § 14.
2. sunt ex quō; like § 25, ll. 5, 6, fuerant ex quō.
6. Praetōriae, in ipsō capite; like § 25, l. 16, Durovernī, in capite.

7, 8. vōs (Accus.) gaudēre (Infin.), depending on sciō.
8-10. nōs (Accus.) triumphāre (Infin.), depending on putātis.
23. quod agās, 'what (or whatsoever) you shall do'; quod = id quod.
26. pugnānt-ēs, Active Adjective from pugnō, agreeing with qui.
35. facinus egregium et audax, 'an act of great gallantry.'

* This long letter (No. 56) is intended to be broken up into several lessons, according to convenience. As it contains no new grammatical features, some teachers may prefer to run over it rapidly.
37. A.S. = Annō Salūtis, 'in the year of Grace'; cp. l. 83.

39. Take pró patriā pugnant-em, 'fighting for one's country,' with viōam exspīrāre = 'to die.'

53. illud, 'that,' referring to principātus Britannicus, but agreeing (according to a common idiom) with patrōcinium, 'protectorate.'

54–58. The skeleton of this long sentence is Videāmus nē (55) turpissimum sit (57) nōn posse (58). Cp. § 52, ll. 8, 9, videat . . . nē . . . capiat. Turpissimum sit, 'it may be a most inglorious thing.' After nōn posse take obtinēre et conservāre, and then id quod acceptimus. The words from ut to sic (55, 56) may be left out till the rest of the sentence has been translated: ut = 'as,' and sic, 'so'; pulcherrimum fuit, 'it was a most glorious thing'; tantam goes with glōriam; and nōbis is Dative after trādere.

58. Illud, 'that,' 'the following thing,' points on to quod, 'that,' l. 59.

61, 62. Batāuis licet, 'it is allowed to (or lawful for) the Dutch,' esse, 'to be,' civibus Britannicīs, 'British subjects.' Licet, like piget and oporet, can only be used in the 3rd Person.

65. ut . . . dicere possit, 'that he shall be able to say' = 'to be able to say'; cp. § 49, ll. 18, 19, dicere posse.

67. A line of a poet of the fifth century A.D. (Claudius Rutilius Namatianus); metre, dactylic.

68. quae . . . ea = ea quae.

70–75. Lines of Claudian, a poet of the fourth century A.D. [De Consulatu Stilichonis, iii. 150 fol.], in dactylic metre.

70. Haec est quae, 'She it is who.'

73. quōs = eōs quōs ; 'has called those whom she has conquered citizens.'

74, 75. dēbēmus quod, 'we owe it that.' gens ūna, 'one family' or 'one nation.'

76. Camillus, the great Roman statesman of the fourth century B.C., who built a temple to Concord in honour of the reconciliation of the Patricians and the Plebeians.

78. in-scribantur, 'shall be inscribed.'

80, 81. Lines of Statius, a poet of the first century A.D. [Thebaid, xii. 573 f.]. estō, 'granted,' lit. 'be it so'; cp. § 49, l. 15. ce-cid-ère is a poetical form of ce-cid-érunt, from cadō; cp. § 48, l. 8.
EXERCISES & CONVERSATIONS.

1. [Adjectives of the 3rd Declension in —, is, e.]

(A) Conversation.

[The questions in this and similar Conversations are supposed to be asked by the teacher, and the answers to be given by the pupil, except where the contrary is indicated.]

Ubi est villa patrui tui?
Villa patrui mei in Cantio, inter Dubras et Rutupias, sita est.
Cur non apud patrem tuum nunc es?
Quia pater meus in Africa Meridiana habitat.
Patruusne tuus tibi loco parentis est?
Ita est. Inter ferias apud patruum meum sum.
Ubi eris post finem mensis Septembris?
Post finem feriarum apud magistrum meum, ad Ventam Belgarum ero.

Ubi habitant amici tui, Marcus et Alexander?
Amici mei prope Dubras habitant.
Quid nunc lectitas?
Vitam Agricolae nunc lectito. Agricola dux celeber primo saeculo post Christum natum fuit.

(B) Oral Drill.—Decline the Latin for 'the month of September' in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for 'the 1st of September' in all Cases of the Plural.

(C) It is the month of-September. After the month of-September I shall be in-the house-of my schoolmaster. In the month of-October I shall give many hours every-day to lessons. Before the end of the month of-December there-will-be holidays. I am now reading about Agricola, the famous general of the Romans. The lives of famous generals delight me much. I like to read about famous generals and about our famous island. In the times of Agricola our island was not famous.

1 'Time when' is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition, as in O.M. (Ora Maritima) § 10, secundō saeculō, 'in the 2nd century.'
2 Use celeber, celebris, celebre for 'famous' throughout this exercise.—In what Case must 'the famous general' be? Think of the meaning ('about the famous general'), and compare Preparations § 1, l. 7.
3 Say, 'I gladly (libenter) read,' and so wherever 'I like to — —' occurs in these exercises.
(D) In the times of Romulus, the first king \(^1\) of the Romans, there were only ten months in the Roman year. The name of the first month was \textit{Martius}, of the second \textit{Aprilis}, of the third \textit{Māius}, of the fourth \textit{Iūnius}, of the fifth \textit{Quintilis}, of the sixth \textit{Sextilis}, of the seventh \textit{September}, of the eighth \textit{Octōber}, of the ninth \textit{November}, of the tenth \textit{December}.

(E) But Numa, the second king, gave two new months to the year. He called the first \textit{Iānuārius},\(^2\) and the second \textit{Februārius}. After the times of Gaius Julius Caesar the Romans used to call the seventh month \textit{Iūlius}; and after the times of Augustus, the first emperor,\(^4\) they used to call the eighth month \textit{Augustus}.

2. \([\text{is}, \text{ea}, \text{id}—\text{Singular Number.}]\)

(A) \textit{Oral Drill.}—Decline the Latin for ‘that emperor,’ ‘that island,’ ‘that name,’ in all Cases of the Singular.

In the following exercises of this section translate ‘he,’ ‘him,’ ‘his’ by Cases of \textit{is} (‘that-one’—‘that-man’), and ‘she,’ ‘her,’ ‘her’ by Cases of \textit{ea} (‘that-one’—‘that woman’).

(B) Gaius Julius Caesar was the first conqueror of Britain. My uncle has told me \(^5\) about him. Tacitus mentions his victory in the Life of Agricola. That book tells about another \(^4\) conqueror of Britain. His name was Agricola. He was-in-command-of \(^6\) Britain during \(^6\) seven years.

(C) The Emperor Vespasianus created him general of the Roman forces in the year 78 A.D.,\(^7\) and gave him \(^8\) great forces.

---

\(^1\) In what Case must ‘the first king’ be? The meaning is ‘in the time of the first king.’ Compare C. note 2 above.

\(^2\) The word \textit{Iānuārius} must agree in Case with the word ‘first’ (—the first month). Similarly \textit{Februārius}.

\(^3\) Say ‘to me’ (Dative Case).

\(^4\) Use \textit{alius}, which is regular in most of its Cases.

\(^5\) Use \textit{praee-sum}, which takes the Dative Case. See O.M. § 40; \textit{ubi quattuor régès Britannis praee-rant} (‘were-in-command-of the Britons,’ or ‘were-commanders to the Britons’).

\(^6\) Use \textit{per}.

\(^7\) Wherever the letters A.D. (—\textit{Annō Domini}) occur in these exercises say \textit{post Christum nātum}; and wherever the letters B.C. (—before Christ) occur, say \textit{ante Christum nātum}. And in each case say ‘in the 78th year’ (instead of ‘in the year 78’), ‘in the 55th year’ (instead of ‘in the year 55’), and so forth.

\(^8\) What Case? Think of the meaning (‘him’ here—‘to him’).
EXERCISES

His daughter was the wife of Tacitus. Her\(^1\) name was Julia. Tacitus loved her much, and gives her great glory in the book about Agricola.

\(D\) In the month of August my uncle had told us \((Dat.)\) about the expeditions of C. Julius Caesar against Britain. He transported the Roman forces into Britain in the year 55 B.C. and won a victory over \(^2\) the southern Britons. One cause of that expedition was the expectation of booty. In the next year Caesar prepared a second and greater expedition, and won a second victory. But that victory too was not great. Tacitus does not praise it.\(^3\)

3. \(\text{is, ea, id—Plural Number.}\)

\((A)\) \text{Oral Drill.}—Decline the Latin for \&quot;those emperors,\quot; \&quot;those islands,\quot; \&quot;those names,\quot; in all Cases of the Plural.

In the following exercises of this section translate \&quot;they,\&quot; \&quot;them,\&quot; \&quot;their\&quot; by Cases of \(ei, eae, ea\).

\((B)\) Accordingly after those victories of C. Julius Caesar the Britons were free, as they had been before them.\(^4\) The midland Britons had not fought against Caesar. Caesar did not subdue them. The Romans had not sold their children into slavery. The father of Cunobelinus was their king in the first century B.C.

\((C)\) The name of that king was Tasciovanus. His son was Cunobelinus. The names of those kings were famous through the whole island. Cunobelinus was king not only of the midland Britons, but also of the southern Britons. He had united them into one people. Some\(^5\) of those tribes were Celts, but some of them were Germans or Belgians. The name of their city stands on coins of that age.

4. \(\text{is, ea, id—continued.}\)

\((A)\) \text{Conversation.}
Quis fuit pater Cunobelini?

---

\(^1\) Say \&quot;of that-woman\&quot; (Genitive of \textit{ea}).

\(^2\) Say \&quot;from.\&quot;

\(^3\) \&quot;It\&quot; means \textit{that victory}. What, then, must be the Gender of the Pronoun in Latin?

\(^4\) \&quot;Them\&quot; means \textit{those victories}. What Gender, then, in Latin?

\(^5\) \&quot;Some of those tribes\&quot; means \&quot;some \textit{tribes} of those tribes.\&quot; What Gender, then, in Latin? Compare \textit{nonnulla ex navigiis} (O.M. § 11), \textit{nonnulli ex Britannis}, etc.
Is rex Tasciovanus fuit.
Quis fuit frater Cunobelini?
Unus ex fratribus eius Epaticcus fuit.
Unde ea nomina nobis nota sunt?
In nummis Britannicis ea lectitare possumus.
Ubi regnabat Cunobelinus?
In Britannia mediterranea et meridiana regnabat: caput regni
eius Camulodunum erat.
Quando regnabat Cunobelinus?
Eo tempore regnabat cum Tiberius et Caligula principes Roman-
orum erant. Ei primo saeculo post Christum natum im-
peritabant.

(B) During the reign of Cunobelinus Tiberius and Caligula were the Roman emperors. They thought about an expedition against our remote and unconquered\(^1\) island. But they never entered it. Its inhabitants did not love Roman emperors, and Roman emperors did not love them. The English Channel\(^2\) had given them freedom.

5. [\(\epsilon\)ius and suus, \(a, um\) contrasted.]

In doing the exercises in this section remember carefully the explanation of the difference between \(\epsilon\)ius and suus, \(a, um\) given in the Preparations (§ 5); and remember also that \(\epsilon\)ius, being the Genitive Case of \(is, ea, id\) and meaning 'of that-one,' is unchangeable, and does not agree with the word to which it belongs, as the Adjective suus, \(a, um\) does. Thus 'his uncle' will be either \(patruus \epsilon\)ius or \(patruus suus\) ('his own uncle').

(A) Oral Drill.—Decline the Latin for 'his uncle,' 'his aunt,' 'her uncle,' 'her aunt,' using (1) \(\epsilon\)ius, (2) suus, \(a, um\).

(B) Caligula was the third emperor of the Romans. His father was Germanicus, a brave and good man. The Romans had given him that name because he had won a victory over the Germans. Germanicus had named his\(^3\) son Gaius, but the soldiers used-to-call him Caligula. Caligula was a coward. His mind was full of folly.

(C) Once he not only thought about an expedition against Britain, but also prepared it. He prepared his expedition in the year 40 A.D. But when he arrived at\(^4\) the English Channel he

---

1 Say 'free' or 'untouched' (intactus, \(a, um\)).
2 Say 'the Gallic Channel' (fretum Gallicum), as in O.M.
3 Think whose son is meant.
4 Say 'arrived to (ad).'
was-afraid, and hurried homewards with his legions. He captured some shells, and called them the booty of the conquered ocean.

6. [ipse, ipsa, ipsum.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Decline the Latin for ‘the emperor himself,’ ‘the wife herself,’ ‘the town itself,’ ‘death itself,’ in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for ‘the Britons themselves’ in all Cases of the Plural.

(B) Caractacus himself was brave, but some of the other captives feared death. The Roman emperor had carried-off the captives to Rome.\(^1\) Caractacus did not fear the emperor himself; he did not fear death itself. To the emperor himself he exhibited\(^2\) a brave mind. By\(^3\) his courage he won\(^4\) freedom for himself and for his wife and his brothers. He was a true son of Cunobelinus himself.

7. [ille, illa, illud.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Decline the Latin for ‘that soldier,’ ‘that colony,’ ‘that town,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

In the exercises of this and the two following sections (8, 9) translate that and those by Cases of ille, illa, illud, Sing. or Plur.

(B) The Romans had placed a colony of veteran soldiers at Colchester.\(^5\) That town was not any-longer\(^6\) the capital of a British kingdom. It was a Roman colony. For the Romans used-to-call towns where soldiers lived ‘colonies.’\(^7\) That colony was the first Roman town in Britain.

(C) That town was not any-longer\(^8\) dear to the Britons. For those Roman veterans had won victories over the Britons, and had sold many British captives into slavery. Those captives

---

\(^1\) See Preparations, § 5, l. 26.

\(^2\) Use praestò.

\(^3\) ‘By’ here means ‘by means of’; how will it be translated in Latin?

\(^4\) Say ‘he prepared (parānit) freedom for himself,’ etc. ‘For’ is here (as generally) to be translated by the Dative, without a Preposition.

\(^5\) Locative Case; see Preparations, § 5, l. 22.

\(^6\) ‘Any-longer’ after ‘not’ is iam.

\(^7\) Make ‘colonies’ agree in Case with ‘towns.’
were the sons or the daughters of Britons. The fathers and mothers of those captives did not love those veterans. At Colchester the Romans had set-up an image of Victory. The Britons did not love that image of Victory.

8. [ille, illa, illud—continued.]

(A) Conversation.
Quid fuit verum nomen reginae audaci Icenorum?
Tacitus illi reginae nomen dat Boudiccae.
Quid fuit verum nomen duci audaci Silurum?
Tacitus illi viro nomen dat Carataco.
Ubi de illa regina et de illo duce lectitavisti?
In historia Anglica de illis lectitavi.
Quid significat verum nomen illius reginae?
Verum nomen illius reginae linguä Celticä Victoriam significat.
Unde illud tibi notum est?
In indice verborum lectitavi.
Quid significat verum nomen filii Cunobelini?
Significatio illius nominis mihi non nota est.
Illud nomen linguä Celticä carum significat.
Quid autem significat falsum illud nomen Caractacii?
Nihil significat.
Sed cur illum virum plerumque Caractacum nominamus?
Quia in uno ex libris manuscriptis illa forma nominis stat:
   sed error est.

(B) "Those 1 Roman forces," said Boadicea, "are-away in Wales. That city where the veterans live is without walls. We do not fear those veterans; they are cowards. Listen to me, Britons! We shall take that city by storm. 2 We shall burn the temple of that emperor Claudius, the new god 3 of the Romans."

9. [ille, illa, illud—continued.]

But those Roman legions hastened from Wales to London. 4 And, although they were not able to save that city from disaster, they won a great victory over the forces of Boadicea. In those legions there were only ten thousand men. 5 And, as one writer

1 For the order of words in Latin, see Preparations, § 7, l. 16.
2 'To take by storm' is expugnäre.
3 What Case? Preparations, § 1, l. 7.
4 See Preparations, § 5, l. 26.
5 Imitate the construction which occurs twice in § 9—ll. 11, 12 ('seventy thousands of Romans'), and ll. 20, 21.
EXERCISES

affirms, Boadicea was-in-command-of a hundred and twenty thousand men. But, if Tacitus tells the truth,¹ those ten thousand Romans slaughtered eighty thousand Britons.

10. [hic, haec, hoc.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Decline the Latin for ‘this distinguished man,’ ‘this famous island,’ ‘this fine monument,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) This victory of the Romans was the cause of death to Boadicea, the queen of the Iceni. To her² life was not dear after this victory of the Romans. One of the Romans too, the prefect of the camp of the second legion, put himself³ to death after this battle. He⁴ had-been-away in Wales with the second legion while Suetonius was-winning this victory. Accordingly to him⁵ too life was not dear.

11. [hic, haec, hoc—continued.]

Julius Agricola was one of the generals of the emperor Vespasian. The daughter of this famous man was Julia, the wife of Tacitus. Tacitus praises the father of this woman, as a just and merciful man, in the book about the life of Agricola. This book tells about ‘Britain subdued.’⁶ For after the times of Agricola there was a long peace in this island.

12. [hic, haec, hoc—continued.]

In the seventh year of his command Agricola defeated the Caledonians, near the ‘Graupian mountain.’ This⁷ is the name of the mountain in the Life of Agricola. We nowadays call this mountain, or these mountains, the ‘Grampian’ mountain or the ‘Grampian’ hills. But we are mistaken. The real name of these hills was ‘the Graupian hills.’ This⁸ is the form of the name in the book of Tacitus.

¹ Say ‘affirms true-things’ (neut. plur. of verus, a, um).
² Use a Case of haec (‘this-woman’).
³ Use sē, as in § 9, l. 23.
⁴ Use a Case of hic (‘this-man’).
⁵ For ‘subdued’ use the Adjective dēbellātus, a, um, formed from the verb dēbellō.
⁶ Think what ‘this’ means. Here it means ‘this name’; and in the last sentence of this exercise it means ‘this form.’
13. [hic, haec, hoc—continued.]

These Highlanders \(^1\) were not cowards, as Agricola declared; they were ready to die for \(^2\) their country. To free their country from the Romans, and to repel \(^3\) slavery from their wives and children, this \(^4\) was the purpose of these Highlanders. "Drive \(^3\) these Romans into the sea!" said Galgacus. But the Dutch cohorts drove the Highlanders out of the mountains. These cohorts were serving under the Roman standards.

14. [Comparatives of Adjectives.]

\((A)\) Oral Drill.—Decline the Latin for 'a braver soldier,' 'a more miserable death,' 'a more beautiful building,' in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for 'juster men,' 'keener defenders,' 'more savage wars,' in all Cases of the Plural.

\((B)\) No soldiers were ever braver \(^5\) than the ancient Romans. But they were cruel. They used to slaughter the unhappy barbarians and burn their cottages. And nothing is more-cruel \(^6\) than to sell the wives and children of the enemy into slavery. But what was more dangerous to the Roman Empire than a turbulent province? Agricola was kinder or less cruel than other Roman victors.

15. [Superlatives of Adjectives.]

\((A)\) Oral Drill.—Decline the Latin for 'the bravest soldier,' 'the most miserable death,' 'the most beautiful building,' in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for 'the justest of all men,' 'a very merciful man,' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

\((B)\) The fate of the slaughtered Britons was unhappy; but the fate of the captives was more-unhappy. For slavery is more-miserable \(^7\) than death. To the Highlanders, as to all

---

\(^1\) Say Caledonians.
\(^2\) Translate 'for' by prō, with the Ablative.
\(^3\) The same Latin verb (meaning 'drive-off') may be used for 'repel,' and for 'drive.'
\(^4\) Use the Neuter Singular.
\(^5\) Remember that the Comparative of an Adjective must agree with the word of which it is said, just like the Adjective itself. In what Gender, Number and Case must 'braver' be?
\(^6\) What Gender?
\(^7\) Use miser, a, um for 'miserable,' as well as for 'unhappy.'
men, wives and children were most-dear. And to all brave
men the fatherland is very-dear. But of all Roman conquerors
Agricola was the justest, the kindest, the most-merciful. And
Britain had been a most-turbulent province.

(C) The Romans were very brave soldiers; but they were very
cruel. C. Julius Caesar was a more cruel conqueror than Agricola,
but he was less cruel than many of the Romans. In the civil
wars he showed himself a very merciful conqueror of his enemies.
He won a very famous victory over Pompeius, but he did not
put Roman captives to death after the battle. In Gaul, however,
he was most inhuman, and slaughtered a large number of the
Helvetii, the Nervii, and other Gallic tribes.

16. [Present, Past Imperfect and Future Passive—1st Conjugation.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Conjugate the Latin for—
  ‘I am often praised by (ab) my friends,’
  ‘I used to be praised by my friends,’
  ‘I used to be delighted with this book,’
in all Persons of these tenses. (In the 2nd Person say ‘by your
friends,’ in the 3rd Person ‘by his friends,’ and so forth.)

(B) The courage of the Nervii is mentioned by Caesar in the
second book of his Gallic War. He declares them to have fought
with the greatest pluck. And in other books other barbarous
tribes of Gaul are praised by him. “Our lands are-being-
devastated by the Romans,” they said; “our men are-being-
slaughtered; our women and children are-being-carried-off into
slavery. Death is less miserable than slavery.”

(C) In Britain, too, after the victory of Suetonius Paulinus
the lands of the inhabitants were-being-devastated, and the
inhabitants themselves were-being-carried-off into slavery. At
Colchester the Trinobantes used-to-be-annoyed with most-cruel
injuries by the Roman veterans, and used-to-be-called cowards

1 What Gender? (Uxor is fem., liber is masc.) See § 12, 1. 12.
2 For ‘very dear’ use the Superlative, as for ‘most dear’ and
‘dearest.’
3 See § 14, ll. 9 and 10.
4 What Case?
5 See § 2, ll. 10 and 11.
6 Use summus, a, um; cp. § 10, 1. 8.
7 Locative Case; see Preparations, § 5, 1. 22.
8 In this and the next two sentences imitate § 7, lines 11–15.
and slaves. The town itself was-being-adorned with very-beautiful Roman buildings, although it was not being strengthened with walls. In the times of Boadicea, Colchester was a Roman, not a British town. Accordingly it was not loved by the Britons.

17. [Passive Voice, continued—same Tenses.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Conjugate the Latin for—
‘I shall be praised by my friends,’
‘I shall be delighted with this book,’
in all Persons of the Future tense.

(B) After the times of Agricola the Britons took-pleasure in Roman buildings and Roman baths. During the second and the third and the fourth century A.D. temples and country-houses and schools were-being-built in Britain, and the towns were-being-strengthened with very-good walls. Colchester was-being-surrounded with walls during the first and the second century A.D.

(C) The life of the Britons was then more civilized. But liberty was gradually being forgotten. Accordingly in the fourth century A.D. the Britons were less brave soldiers than they had been in the times of Cassivelaunus and Caractacus. Remains of very-fine amphitheatres and baths are-seen at the present day at Silchester and at Colchester.

(D) Conversation.
Nonne bella hodierna minus saeava sunt quam bella antiqua fuerunt?
Minus saeava sunt.
Cur hoc affirmas?
Bella antiqua saeviora fuerunt quam bella hodierna, quia temperibus antquis captivi a victoribus trucidabantur vel in servitute venumabantur.

---

1 In what Case must 'cowards' and 'slaves' be? They must agree in Case with the Noun of which they are said (the Trinobantes).
2 For 'to take pleasure in' say 'to be delighted with' throughout this exercise, and use the Past Imperfect tense (Passive) wherever the tense is Past in English.
3 Use the Passive of circum-dō, 'I surround.'
4 For 'was-being-forgotten' say 'was-being-given to oblivion' (§ 15, l. 17).
Verum est. Nos hodierni, igitur, clementiores sumus in bello quam Romani antiqui fuerunt?
Clementiores sumus; nam feminae liberique a nobis non trucidantur, neque in servitutem venumdantur.
Num Romani milites fortiores fuerunt quam nostri?
Non fortiores fuerunt; nulli milites umquam fortiores fuerunt quam nostri.
Nonne Romani milites fortissimi fuerunt?
Fortissimi fuerunt; sed nostri quoque fortissimi sunt.
Num et Romani et nostri fortissimi esse possunt?
Possunt; sed neque Romani fortiores fuerunt quam nostri sunt, neque nostri minus fortes sunt quam Romani fuerunt.

18. [Questions and Exclamations.]

(A) Conversation.
Mark. At what o'clock shall we play\(^1\) tennis to-day?
Antony. At \(12\) o'clock,\(^2\) and perhaps at \(3\) o'clock and at \(6\) o'clock.
Alexander. Do you not sometimes play tennis before breakfast?
Antony. Yes,\(^3\) but not often. My uncle does not like\(^4\) to play tennis before breakfast.
Mark. How-many\(^5\) hours have you given to studies to-day?
Antony. Not yet two hours.
Alexander. How glad I shall be\(^6\) when it is\(^7\) \(12\) o'clock!

(B) Conversation—continued.
Mark. Do you like to read the Agricola of Tacitus?
Antony. It is too difficult.
Mark. When shall we swim in the sea?
Alexander. Won't it be better to swim in the sea before lunch?
Mark. At what o'clock will your uncle arrive home?
Antony. At \(1\) o'clock.
Alexander. Why don't we walk to the sea at-once?
Antony. It is now \(12\) o'clock.
Mark and Alexander. Bravo, hurrah!

---

\(^1\) Use *operam dare* with the Dative: § 1, l. 19.
\(^2\) Count the hours from \(6\) o'clock in the morning; \(12\) o'clock will be the sixth hour. (The Latin number of the hour will always be exactly opposite to that indicated by the hour-hand of a modern clock.)
\(^3\) Say 'So it is' or 'You tell the truth' (*vēra narrās*).
\(^4\) Use *libenter*, as in Ex. \(1\) (C), note 3.
\(^5\) *Quot* (indeclinable).
\(^6\) Say 'how-much I-shall-be-delighted.'
\(^7\) Say 'shall-be' (Future tense).
(C) **Conversation.**
Quid vos pueros inter ferias maxime delectat?
Inter ferias ludo trigonali maxime delectamur.
Quid, cum Ventae Belgarum eritis, vos maxime delectabit?
Cum Ventae Belgarum erimus, per hiemem folle, per aestatem
pila delectabimur.
Nonne scholis et studiis delectabimini?
Nonnulli ex pueris scholis et libris delectabuntur, sed non omnes
Num multi?
Fortasse non multi.
Magistri ne ludis pilorum delectantur?
Nonnulli ex magistris ludis operam dant: non sine scientia pila
dextra laevaque captatur.
Num sine scientia follis volans geminatur et revocatur?
Magna est scientia follem volantem geminare et revocare.

19. **[qui, quae, quod and quis, quid—in questions.]**

(A) **Oral Drill.**—Decline the Latin for 'Which Roman general?,' 'Which Roman legion?,' 'Which Roman town?' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) Which Roman general was the first conqueror of Britain? To which general did the emperor Claudius entrust infantry and cavalry forces for the sake of subduing Britain? Aulus Plautius was the commander of the Roman forces in Britain in the year 43 A.D. Which Roman legions were in Britain in that year? The Second, and the Ninth, and the Fourteenth and the Twentieth legions. From which part of Europe did the emperor transport these four legions into Britain? From Germany, where they were serving.

(C) The general of the Second legion was Vespasianus. Who was Vespasianus? He had been praetor at Rome; and after the death of Nero the Romans created him Emperor. In which land did he win his first victories? In Britain, where he is reported to have fought thirty battles, to have taken by storm twenty towns, and to have subdued the Isle of Wight.

---

1 Imitate the construction in § 6, l. 4 (*regnem spectandi*), or that in § 9, ll. 22 and 23 (*proeliis spectandi*).
2 Remember that *legiō* is Feminine.
3 Compare § 2, l. 19, and Ex. 7 (B), note 7.
4 Use the Passive of *narrō*.
5 Perfect Infinitive, ending in *-isse*; cp. § 2, l. 11.
6 Omit this 'and' in translating.
By whom is he said to have won these victories? By Suetonius, the Roman writer. Which towns did he take by storm? It is not known.

20. [qui, quæ, quod—without questioning sense.]

The words put in brackets in the following exercise are to be translated into Latin, together with the rest of each sentence. The reason for putting them in brackets is to show that they make a complete little sentence within a larger sentence, like one Chinese box within another. The Case of the word qui will be seen by thinking of the little sentence as if it were a separate sentence. Thus 'whom the Romans created Emperor' is like 'him the Romans created Emperor' or 'the Romans created him Emperor.'

(A) Oral Drill.—Translate the following pairs of sentences into Latin, using is for 'he,' and qui for 'who.'

Augustus (he was the first Roman Emperor) did not enter Britain.
Tiberius (him the Romans created Emperor in A.D. 14) did not enter Britain.
Caligula (his father was Germanicus) did not enter Britain.
Claudius (to him Germanicus was father) was the conqueror of Britain.
Nero (about him we read in the Annals of Tacitus) was the fifth Roman emperor.

(B) In the following pairs of sentences translate 'it' by the Feminine or Neuter of is, and 'which' by the Feminine or Neuter of qui.

Augustus did not enter the island (we call it Britain).
Claudius was the conqueror of the island (we call it Britain).
Camulodunum was a town of the Trinobantes (in it the Romans placed a colony of veterans).

Augustus (who was the first Roman Emperor) did not enter Britain.
Tiberius (whom the Romans created Emperor in A.D. 14) did not enter Britain.
Caligula (whose father was Germanicus) did not enter Britain.
Claudius (to whom Germanicus was father) was the conqueror of Britain.
Nero (about whom we read in the Annals of Tacitus) was the fifth Roman emperor.

Camulodunum was a town of the Trinobantes (in which the Romans placed a colony of veterans).

1 Use the Passive of affirmō.
(C) Vespasianus (whom the Romans created Emperor after the death of Nero) was the ninth emperor of the Romans. For between Nero and Vespasianus there were three other Emperors. What were their names? Their names were Galba and Otho and Vitellius. Galba (who had served in Britain under Claudius together with Vespasianus) was-emperor\(^1\) for six months in the year 69 A.D. Otho (whom the soldiers of the Germanic legions had created Emperor) was-emperor\(^1\) for only three months, and then put himself to death. Vitellius (whom his-own soldiers murdered after he had-been-emperor\(^2\) for eight months) was very-cowardly and very-lazy.

21. [qui, quae, quod—continued.\(^3\)]

(A) To whom did the Emperor Vespasianus entrust the chief command\(^4\) of the British legions after the rebellion of Boadicea? The-man\(^5\) (to whom Vespasian entrusted the chief command of the British legions) was Agricola (whose daughter was the beloved wife of Tacitus). The 'British legions' were the Roman legions (which were-serving in Britain). And the Roman legions (of which Otho had-been the general) were-called the 'Germanic legions,' because they were-serving in Germany.

(B) After the victory of the Romans a Roman writer called the Ocean (by-which\(^6\) the western boundaries of the Roman Empire were surrounded) 'the Roman Ocean.' In the second century A.D. Britain was a Roman province. And before the end of the fourth century the Britons (who had fought with so-great pluck against C. Julius Caesar and Aulus Plautius and Agricola) were not any-longer desirous of liberty. For the delights of the 'Roman peace' were dearer to them than liberty.

(C) Conversation.
Quis vallum illud magnum aedificavit, quod inter Luguvalium et Segedunum situm erat?

---

1 Use the Verb imperitō, 'I am emperor'; cp. § 3, l. 21.
2 Use the Perfect tense. What word for 'after'? See Preparations, § 2, l. 1.
3 In this exercise it will be seen that subordinate sentences introduced by qui, quae, quod (and here enclosed in brackets) are sometimes necessary to the sense of the principal sentences to which they belong.
4 See § 10, l. 9.
5 Use is for 'the-man.'
6 Use the Ablative, without a Preposition.
EXERCISES

El qui illud vallum aedificavit nomen fuit Hadriano.
Quid fuit nomen ei qui vallum inter Clotam et Bodotriam situm aedificavit?
Nomen ei fuit Antonino Pio.
Qui homines fuerunt contra quos Agricola in Caledonia bellavit?
Hombres contra quos Agricola in Caledonia bellavit Picti fortasse fuerunt.
Quid fuit nomen collibus in quibus victoriam magnam reportavit?
Collibus in quibus victoriam magnam reportavit nomen fuit Monti Graupio.
Verane est haec forma nominis?
Vera est; nam haec est forma nominis quae in libro Taciti de vita Agricolae stat.
Cur, igitur, nos hodierni colles Grampios vocamus?
Nomen quod nos hodierni illis collibus damus falsum est.

22. [2nd Conjugation—Present, Past Imperfect and Future—Active.

(A) Oral Drill.—Conjugate the Latin for—
'I see Richborough,'
'I used to see many ancient buildings,'
'I shall see my friends to-morrow,'
in all Persons of these tenses.

(B) Among the very-beautiful Roman villas, whose foundations we see at-the-present-day in Britain, was the villa which was situated in the Isle of Wight. This villa, which the Romans built in the first century A.D., has three parts. In the part which looks to the West you see a vestibule and a hall and a dining-room and a kitchen. The vestibule and the hall have tesselated pavements. The pavement of the vestibule is made of red and white cubes. The cubes of the hall are red and white and blue and black. In the part of the villa which looks to the North the slaves used-to-live.

(C) Conversation.
Nonne libenter ruinas aedificiorum antiquorum vides?
Libenter video.

1 Say 'in the number of.'
2 For 'to see' use videō throughout this exercise: for 'to look' use spectō.
3 Say 'fabricated out-of,' fabricātus (a, um) ex.
4 'To live' here means 'to dwell.'
EXERCISES

Fuistine in insula Vecti?
Numquam fui; sed reliquias illius villae quam Romani ibi aedificaverunt aliquando videbo, ut spero. Num prope oram maritimam iacet?
Temporibus Romanis prope oram maritimam iacebat; sed nunc procul a mari iacet. Nonne tibi aliud aedificium notum est, quod quondam prope mare iacebat sed nunc procul abest?
Castellum Rutupinum quondam prope mare iacebat et hodie procul abest: nam temporibus antiquis totus campus, qui nunc inter castellum et oram maritimam iacet, pars maris erat.
Quid tibi de villa Romana in insula Vecti sita notum est?
Vestibulum et atrium et triclinium et culinam habebat.
Quid est in vestibulo et atrio?
Vestibulum et atrium pavimenta tessellata habent.
Num pavimenta tessellata in Castello Rutupino videmus?
Nulla pavimenta tessellata in Castello Rutupino videmus.

23. [4th Declension and 2nd Conjugation—continued.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Decline the Latin for ‘a British harbour,’ ‘the right hand,’ ‘the left wing,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) The whole villa is built in a square shape, of which only three sides have buildings. Between the three wings lies a large open-space. In the northern wing there is a well, from which water used-to-be-provided by the slaves. About the use of the southern wing nothing is known. But at the eastern end of this wing there are the remains of baths. You do not see these baths in the picture which stands on page 16 of this book. A Roman officer once used-to-live in this villa.

(C) In Roman times this villa lay not far from the sea. For the sea used-to-stretch to the place where the villa stands. The place now lies two or three miles from the sea. There was once a harbour near the villa, as the keeper affirms. Many Roman coins of Domitianus, the son of Vespasianus, and coins of Hadri-

---

1 Imitate § 23, 1. 15. For ‘is built’ use est with the Passive Adj.
2 Use ad.
3 Say ‘on the 16th page.’
4 Say ‘thousands of paces.’
EXERCISES

anus, and of Antoninus Pius and of his wife Faustina, are dug-up near the villa. Many very-beautiful urns too and glass-vessels lay under the soil. The Saxons are said to have burnt the villa in the fifth century A.D.

24. [4th Declension—continued.]

(A) How many miles was Richborough Harbour distant from the Gallic port whence vessels mostly sailed to Britain? It was distant about forty miles. The name of this Gallic port was Gessoriācum. At-the-present-day this port has the name Boulogne. The Roman poet Lucan mentions Richborough Harbour; and the poet Juvenal praises the oysters of Richborough Harbour. He declares them to have been very-good.

(B) There were other very-famous ports on the coast of Southern Britain in Roman times. Among these ports was the port of Lymne, in which the fleet of Agricola used-to-have its special station. In the second century A.D. there were Roman ships in all the British ports. The Romans used-to-call the Roman ships which had their station in British ports the ‘British fleet.’ Even before Roman times ships used-to-sail from Gaul to these ports for-the-sake of commerce.

25. [2nd Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Conjugate the Latin for—
‘I have destroyed the building,’
‘I had provided water,’
‘I shall have held the coin in my hand,’
‘I have had the book in my hands,’
‘I laughed, but I answered nothing,’
in all Persons of these tenses.

(B) The Angles and the Saxons destroyed many very-famous Roman buildings. Among the buildings which they destroyed was the very-beautiful villa of which we see the remains in the Isle of Wight. Hengist and Horsa had many ships and many men.

1 Use the Passive of affirmō.
2 Say ‘to this port there is.’
3 Lūcānus.
4 Iuvenālis.
5 Say ‘in the number of.’
6 Portus Lemanīs.
7 Say ‘already.’
They landed their ships in the Isle of Thanet. When did they hold their course to Britain? In the fifth century A.D. In what land had they had their home (domum suam)? In Jutland.

(C) Why did the Britons provide a home for the Angles and Saxons in the Isle of Thanet? Why did Hengist and Horsa hold their course to Britain? Why did they not remain in Jutland? When the Romans recalled their legions from Britain in the fifth century A.D., the Britons were not able to drive-off their enemies, the Picts and Scots, who were-devastating the lands of northern Britain. Accordingly they implored the help of the Angles and Saxons against the Picts and Scots.

(D) But afterwards the unhappy Britons were sorry that they had provided a home for these men in Britain. After a few years the Angles and Saxons were not any longer the friends of the Britons. They fought against the Britons, and devastated their lands. Gildas, a British writer of that age, calls the Angles and Saxons 'barbarians' and 'savage wolves.'

26. [2nd Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active—continued.]

(A) The Romans had taught the Britons (Accus.) the knowledge of the true God. But the Angles and Saxons used-to-worship many gods. Accordingly they destroyed the Christian churches which the Romans had built in Britain. The Britons did not rejoice that (quod) the Romans had not remained in Britain. For the Angles and Saxons were more cruel enemies than the Romans had been.

(B) When the Britons implored the help of the Romans against the Angles and Saxons, the Romans answered thus: "We are not able to lend you help." The Britons were very sorry that they had not forbidden the Angles and Saxons to land their ships in the Isle of Thanet.

(C) Conversation.
Quid in Castello Rutupino vidisti?
Muros castelli vidi, et Crucem Sancti Augustini et cuniculum qui sub magnam partem areae pertinet.

1 Say 'to'; cp. § 23, l. 3, and § 25, l. 12.
2 The Perfect Stem of maneo is mans-; see Latin Vocabulary.
3 Say 'it vexed the Britons that (quod)'; cp. § 23, l. 18.
4 Say 'to provide help for you.'
5 Say 'it vexed the Britons much'; cp. § 1, l. 9.
EXERCISES

Nonne muri altiores quondam fuerunt quam nunc sunt?
Altiore fuerunt; nam partem murorum aetas delevit, pars alte
sub solo iacet.
Quam longus est ille cuniculus?
Aqua haeret.
Nonne per totum cuniculum ambulavistis?
Ita est; sed memoria non teneo.
Quid vidistis in cuniculo?
Locus obscurus est; sed cereos in manu tenuimus, quos custos
cestelli praebuerat. Puteum altum vidimus.
Cui erat usui puteus ille in cuniculo situs?
Ex illo puteo aqua praebebatur si castellum obsidebatur.
Quando castellum obsessum est?
De fortuna castelli nihil constat. Sed fortasse Angli et Saxones
castellum deleverunt, postquam Romani copias suas ex
Britannia revocaverunt.
Nonne piguit Britannos quod Anglis Saxonibusque domum in
insula Tanati praebuerant?
Piguit. Nam ut Romani primo saeculo post Christum natum,
sic quinto saeculo Angli Saxonesque totam insulam vasta-
verunt.

27. [Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Form Passive Adjectives from the following
Verbs, using the English words in brackets as a guide:—

accūsō [accusation]  | deleō [deletion]
illustrō [illustration]  | moveō [motion]
exportō [exportation]  | teneō [re-tention]
parō [pre-paration]  | videō [vision]
servō [pre-servation]  | habeō [habit]
creō [creation]  | pro-hibēō [pro-hibition]

Give the Latin for—
The church had been built by the Christians.
The castle has been destroyed by the Saxons.
A conversation will have been held between us.
The castle was destroyed in the third or fourth century A.D.
The missionaries were not forbidden to land their ship.
Water was provided by the keeper of the castle.

Give the Latin for 'I have been accused by you' and 'you
have been accused by me,' according as the person speaking and
the person spoken to are (1) men, (2) women. What is the Latin
for 'I had been praised by my schoolmaster' (said by a boy), 'I shall have been praised by my schoolmistress' (said by a girl)?

(B) The villa, of which you have not-yet seen the remains in the Isle of Wight, was built by the Romans. It was burned by the Angles and Saxons in the fifth century A.D. When was Richborough Castle destroyed? Nothing is known about the time when this very-fine castle was destroyed. Perhaps the Saxons destroyed it.

(C) But if a conversation was held between the King of Kent and St. Augustine through the windows of the castle, as is affirmed by some writers, the castle had not been destroyed at the time when St. Augustine with his forty attendants sailed from the Gallic port to Britain. The castle had been built two or three centuries before.

28. [Fifth Declension.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Decline the Latin for 'a beautiful face,' 'that day,' 'this hope (spēs, 5th Decl.),' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) Gregory had been moved with pity on-account of the very-beautiful faces of the boys whom he had seen in the forum. The boys with the beautiful faces were captives. He declared that the boys had the faces of angels. "They ought to be Christians," said he; "for now they have no hope of a better life." From that day Gregory was desirous of teaching the knowledge of the true God in England.

29. [5th Declension—continued.]

That jolly day on which we saw Richborough Castle was the

---

1 Say 'at that (eō) time, when.'
2 What Case? See Preparations, § 20, l. 15. The Abl. of duo is duōbus, and that of tria is tribus.
3 Say 'he declared the boys to have.'
4 Say 'it behoves them to be Christians,' and make 'Christians' agree in Case with 'them.'
5 Hope' is spēs, 5th Declension.
6 Form a Noun in -ndum from the Verb doceō; and remember that the vowel of the 2nd Conjugation is e where the 1st Conjugation has a.
7 Notice the different Prepositions used in English to express 'Time when'; 'on this day,' 'in this year (or month or century),' 'at this hour.'
sixteenth day of the month of September. Within seven days the end of the holidays will have arrived. There-will-have-been fifty-four ¹ days from the beginning of the holidays. On the twenty-third ² day of the month of September I shall be in-the-house-of my schoolmaster. On the next day there-will-be the beginning of lessons.

30. **Conversation.**

Quae sunt res quibus pueri maxime delectantur?
Feriae, vel inter scholas dies feriati.
Quibus rebus per ferias vel per dies feriatos plerumque operam
dant?
Ludis pilarum.
Quae sunt genera diversa pilarum?
Unum est genus follium, alterum trigonum; tertium est genus
earum quae lingua Latina nominari non possunt.
Cur lingua Anglica nominari possunt, lingua Latina non possunt?
Quia res ipsa Romanis non nota fuit.
Qua ex his rebus tu ipse maxime delectaris?
Nihil melius est quam follis.
Sed his rebus tum quoque operam das cum apud magistrum
Verum est; sed nonnullis diebus scholae sunt a mane usque ad
vesperum.

31. **A Portrait of Boadicea.**

Dio Cassius, the historian,³ declares Boadicea to have been a woman of ⁴ great stature, with a warlike face, blue eyes, and ⁵ long and yellow hair. She had ⁶ an embroidered ⁷ tunic, over which there-was a cloak. In her hand she held a spear. Thus she stood in her chariot, riding among the ranks of her Britons. See the picture which stands on the 11th page of this book.

---

¹ Say ‘four and fifty.’
² Say ‘third and twentieth.’
³ Say ‘the writer of things.’
⁴ Use the Ablative Case.
⁵ Omit this ‘and’ in translating.
⁶ Use the Past Imperfect tense for this and all the other Past tenses which follow in this exercise.
⁷ For this and other new words in this exercise, see the English-Latin Vocabulary.
It is not strange\(^1\) that the Britons loved and feared their queen. The name of Boudicca itself signified\(^2\) in the Celtic tongue nothing else than Victoria.\(^3\)

\textit{A Grammatical Lesson in Latin.}

Quot sunt declinationes nominum Latinorum? Latine mihi responde.
Quinque sunt declinationes, prima, secunda, tertia, quarta, quinta.
Quot coniugationes verborum Latinorum tibi notae sunt?
Duae coniugationes, prima et secunda.
Suntne aliae coniugationes verborum?
Aliae sunt coniugationes, sed non aliae declinationes.
Recte: cuius declinationis est nomen \textit{miles}?
Tertiae declinationis.
Recte. Declina mihi hoc nomen in Numero Singulare.
Miles, militem, militis, militi, cum milite.
Recte. Quae sunt terminationes duarum illarum coniugationum?
Terminationes \textit{primae} Personae Numeri Singularis sunt \textit{o et eo}.
Optime respondisti. Coniuga mihi tempus Praesens verbi \textit{video}.
Video, vides, videt, videmus, videtis, vident.
Tempus Praeteritum-imperfectum coniuga.
Videram, videras —
Non recte. In omnibus coniugationibus tempora Praeterita-imperfecta terminationes \textit{bam, bas, bat} habent.
Videbam, videbas, videbat, cetera.
Recte: cur terminationes \textit{eram, eras} dedisti?
Fortasse quia verbum \textit{sum} in tempore Praeterito-imperfecto \textit{eram, eras, erat} habet.
Quae sunt nomina aliorum temporum?
Futurum, Perfectum?
Recte; et Plusquamperfectum et Perfectum Futuri.

32. [3rd Conjugation—Present Active and Passive.]

\textit{(A) Oral Drill.}—Dic Latine—
'I often write letters in the morning,'
in omnibus personis Praesentis Activi, et

\(^1\) Say 'a strange-thing,' cp. § 6, l. 13; § 7, l. 9; for 'that' see § 23, l. 18; § 31, l. 14.
\(^2\) Use the Ablative without a Preposition.
\(^3\) Cp. § 24, ll. 18–20.
EXERCISES

'I am sometimes sent to Richborough,'
in omnibus personis Praesentis Passivi.

(B) "Why do you not admit the Outlanders to the citizen-ship?" So our Minister writes. The Boers answer thus: "We do not admit them because they will not be loyal citizens of our Republic. We are not able to admit a multitude of new citizens into our Republic." The Boers say that the Outlanders are too many. In the African Republic, which is situated across the River Vaal, the number of the Boers is smaller than of the Outlanders.

33. [3rd Conjugation—Past Imperfect Active and Passive.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine sententias Exercitii 32 (A) cum tempore Praeterito-Imperfecto pro Praesenti.

(B) The Romans used to admit foreigners to the citizenship. In the first century B.C. there was a Spaniard, to whom Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, a very famous Roman general, gave the Roman citizenship. After that time he was called Lucius Cornelius Balbus. While Caesar was leading his forces against the Celtic and Germanic tribes which inhabited Gaul, Balbus was with him. Balbus used to write letters for Caesar about public affairs. These letters used to be sent to Cicero and other very distinguished men.

34. [3rd Conjugation—Present and Past Imperfect—continued.]

(A) The names Gaius and Balbus are very famous; for they stand in a book which used to be read by all English boys. The book says that Gaius and Balbus built a wall. But who was Gaius, and who was Balbus? Lucius Cornelius Balbus was a friend of Gaius Julius Caesar.

---

1 Say 'faithful' (fidus, a, um).
2 Use the Accusative with the Infinitive (the Outlanders to be too many), just as if 'declare' had been used instead of 'say' (dicō); and make 'many' agree with 'the Outlanders.'
3 Use dūcō (3rd Conjugation).
4 Use incolō (3rd Conjugation).
5 'For ' here means 'instead of'; therefore translate it by prō (with the Ablative).
6 Say 'about the Republic' (Singular Number, cf. Note on p. 84.)
7 Say 'Gaius and Balbus (Accus.) to have built (Perfect Infinit.) a wall.'
But this Balbus and this Gaius never built a wall, as is-said in the very-famous book which we have mentioned. And Balbus is a surname; but Gaius is a fore-name. The Romans used-not-to-say "Balbus and Gaius built a wall," just as we¹ in the English language do not say "John² and Jones³ built a wall."

35. [3rd Conjugation—Present and Past Imperfect, continued.]

(A) In the times of Caesar the Rhine used-to-divide Gaul from Germany. Read the first chapter of the first book of the Gallic War, where Caesar says this.³ He also says this:³ "The Germans inhabit the lands which lie across the Rhine." The region which used-to-be-inhabited by the Belgae was a part of Gaul. For Gaul used-to-be-divided into three parts, of which one used-to-be-called Belgium.

(B) But even⁴ before the times of Caesar many German tribes used-to-inhabit lands which lay in Gaul. Caesar himself says that⁵ German tribes had migrated across the Rhine. Thus⁶ in very-ancient times a part of Gaul used-to-be-inhabited by Germans. The Belgians themselves were-said⁷ to be of Germanic origin.

(C) At-the-present-day the Rhine does not divide France from Germany; for some of the provinces which lie across the Rhine are part of Germany. In the year 187⁸ there-was a war between the French and the Germans about this matter.⁹ Before the war the French used-to-say that these provinces were theirs;¹⁰ and in-fact¹¹ the people¹² by whom these provinces were-inhabited were mostly French.

¹ Use the Pronoun in Latin, because 'we' is emphatic in the English.
² Use the English names, as they stand.
³ Use the Neuter Singular ('this-thing').
⁴ Say 'already.'
⁵ Use the Accusative with Infinitive. So in all future passages where the English has 'that' depending on the verb 'to say.'
⁶ Use utaque.
⁷ Use the Past Imperfect tense.
⁸ Say 'in the year thousandth eight-hundredth seventieth'; cp. § 25, l. 8.
⁹ Use rés for 'matter.'
¹⁰ Use suus, a, um, and make it agree with 'provinces.'
¹¹ ré vērā.
¹² Say 'men' (hominēs).
EXERCISES

36. [3rd Conjugation, Future Active and Passive.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine sententias Exercitii 32 (A) cum tempore Futuro pro Praesentii.

(B) I shall like to read the letters which my father or my mother will send me from South Africa, if there is war. Will my father himself serve against the enemy? If my father is sent to Natal, or into the Dutch Republics of South Africa, for the sake of fighting, my mother will write to me.

(C) The British forces will not be driven into the sea by the Boers, even if they are fewer in number than the enemy. They will defend our Colonies. If the Boers overrun Natal, as our master says, greater forces will be sent from Britain. If these do not conquer the enemy, we shall enrol other forces. Some day, perhaps, the letters which will be sent me about this war will be read by other boys.

(C) Conversation.
Quid mihi de Republica Africana Batavorum dicere potes?
Respublica Africana Batavorum trans Vahalem flumen sita est.
Cur illam partem Africae Meridianae incolunt coloni illi Batavi?
Coloni Batavi, qui Rempublicam Africam nunc incolunt,
Coloniam nostram Anglicam in Africa Meridiana sitam quondam incoebant.
Cur ex Colonia nostra Africana migraverunt?
Quia magna discordia fuit inter nos et colonos Batavos.
Unde nata est illa discordia?
Haeret aqua.
Ego tibi dicam: ex manumissione servorum nata est. Sed unde nata est discordia qua nunc est inter nos et illos?
Ex peregrinis illis nata est, qui Rempublicam Africanam incolunt.
Quid est nomen urbi quam peregrini incolunt?
Nomen ei urbi est Johannesburg.
Ita est; Urbs Aurea interdum vocatur, quia multum auri sub solo est. Quid est nomen Ministro nostro qui Coloniiis praest?
Cognomen ei est Chamberlain: praenomen ei est Iosepho.
Nonne cognomen illud Latine reddere potes?
Non possum.

1 Say 'to me' (either the Dative or ad with the Accusative).
2 Use the Future tense.
3 Say 'into.'
Forma Latina illius cognominis Camerarius est; nam saeculo sexto decimo post Christum natum vir doctus 1 fuit cui nomen Latinum erat Camerario; atque parentibus eius nomen fuerat quod lingua Germanica nihil aliud significabat quam Chamberlain.

37. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed with s.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
‘I have written a letter,’
‘I had said something new,’
‘I shall not have declared war,’
in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(B) A Letter from Antony to his Mother.

My dearest Mother, 2
I hope you are quite well. 3 My uncle has written me 4 a letter in which he says strange things. "The African Republics," he says, 5 "have declared war upon us." Please 6 write to me soon, unless you have already written. Have the Boers sent an army against our Colony? Will my father serve against the enemy? Perhaps before the arrival of this letter we shall have led our forces against the enemy. I write on the 12th day of the month of October. Farewell.

38. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed without any suffix.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
‘I have read the letter,’
‘I had defended the land,’
‘I shall have conquered the enemy,’
in omnibus personis horum temporum.

---

1 Joachim Camerarius; the name of his family had once been Kammermeister, which means 'chamberlain.'
2 Say 'Antony sends greeting to his dearest mother.'
3 This may be translated literally ('I hope you to be well'), or the beginning of the letter in § 37 may be imitated.
4 Say 'to me' (either the Dative or ad with the Accusative).
5 Use inquit.
6 Use amābō tē (lit. 'I shall love you'), and put it after 'write to me soon,' as in O.M. § 21, monstrā nōbis, amābō tē.
EXERCISES

(B) My mother wrote to me on the 11th day of the month of October. She told me that the Dutch Republics of South Africa had declared war upon us. How glad I was to read the letter which my father sent after the victories of our forces! You, most-brave Irish battalions, ascended Talana Hill and defeated the enemy. And you, English and Scottish battalions, charged most-bravely at Elandslaagte. The Boers have not yet driven the Britons into the sea.

39. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Form Passive Adjectives from the following Verbs, using the English words in brackets as a guide:

scribō [de-scription] | mittō [mission]
con-scribō [con-scription] | agō [action]
re-duō [re-duction] | défendō [defence, defensive]
col-ligō [col-lection] | vincō [victory]

Give all the Persons of the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive of dúō, mittō and vincō; and the 3rd Persons Sing. and Plur. of the same tenses of scribō.

(B) Three letters have been sent to me from South Africa about the war. Of these letters, two have been written-out by me into my note-book. Three battles have been fought. In two of these battles the Boers have been defeated; but in one battle we have been defeated. Nevertheless the British flag has been bravely defended. New forces have already been enrolled. They will soon have been sent to South Africa. The forces of the enemy have been collected around Ladysmith.

40. [4th Conjugation—Present tense, Active and Passive.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
'I am guarding the camp,'
'I am coming to the camp,'

---

1 Use dúō for 'tell,' and note that 'me' = 'to me.'
2 Say 'How gladly I read' (Perfect tense).
3 Use vincō here and in all future exercises for 'defeat.'
4 Imitate § 38, ll. 13, 14.
5 What Gender? ('two'—'two letters'). For declension of dúo, duae, duo, see Latin-English Vocabulary.
6 Say 'engaged-in' (Pass. of committō).
7 Use the Pronoun in Latin, because 'we' is emphatic.
8 in with the Accusative.
in omnibus personis Praesentis Activi; et
'I am being guarded by our soldiers,'
in omnibus personis Praesentis Passivi.

(B) I hear that¹ our men are-guarding Ladysmith, and that¹ the Boers are besieging the town. Ladysmith is not a fortified² town; it has no walls. Accordingly it will not be easy to guard the place. But a very-great store³ of arms and of food is kept⁴ in the town. "Do you hear," says our master, "that the Boers have placed⁵ their biggest guns on all the hills by which Ladysmith is surrounded?" But new forces are-coming from Britain.

41. [4th Conjugation—Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
'I was guarding the camp,'
'I shall guard the camp,'
'I was being guarded by our soldiers,"
'I shall be guarded by our soldiers,'
in omnibus personis temporum Praeteriti-imperfecti et Futuri; et
'I shall arrive home (domum),'
in omnibus personis temporis Futuri; et
'I know that⁶ there is danger of war,'
in omnibus personis temporis Praesentis.

(B) In the times of Boadicea, Colchester was not a fortified town. The Roman veterans who were-guarding the place did not know that⁶ there was danger of a British rebellion. "The Britons," they said, "will never come for the sake of attacking Colchester." But the Britons were-coming with a very-great army. Why were we not fortifying Ladysmith before the war?

¹ 'I hear that ...' is expressed in Latin by the same construction as 'I say (or declare) that ...'.
² Use the Passive Adjective munitus, a, um.
³ Use copia; for 'very-great' see § 20, l. 16.
⁴ Use custodiō.
⁵ Form the Perfect Infinitive by adding -isse to the Perfect Stem Active of ponō, which is posu-; cp. § 40, l. 12.
⁶ 'I know that ...' is expressed in Latin by the same construction as 'I say (or declare) that' and 'I hear that.' In English, too, we may say 'I know him to be a friend,' as well as 'I know that he is a friend.'
When will our new forces arrive in South Africa? We shall soon know.

42. [4th Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]
(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
'I have heard my country's call' (imitate § 42, l. 10),
'I have arrived home (domum),'
'I came, I saw, I conquered,'
in omnibus personis temporis Perfecti.

(B) Have you heard the very-famous song about the fifty thousand horse and foot who are sailing to the Cape of Good Hope? "The British soldier," it says, "has heard his country's call." I have heard and I have sung this song. We have also heard the song about the Soldiers of the Queen. Some of these men have already arrived in South Africa. At the time when they sailed from our southern port they had not heard the news about Ladysmith. When they have arrived at the Cape of Good Hope, they will be sent to Natal.

(B) Conversation. (The first speaker is the pupil.)
Num quid novi hodie ex Africa Meridiana audivisti?
Nihil novi audivi. Nostri Castra Mariana ut possunt custodiunt; sed post proelium illud quod die tricesimo mensis Octobris pugnatum est nihil novi est.
Quot sunt nostri qui ibi obsidentur?
NESCO: sed audio eos circiter duodecim milia esse numero.
Quot sunt Batavi qui eos obsident?
NEMO scit; sed numero nostros multum superant.
Sed tum cum quinquaginta illa milia virorum, quos nuper emisimus, in Africam Meridianam advenerint, numero nos non superabunt, ut spero.
NESCO; nam Batavi sexaginta milia virorum habere dicuntur.

1 Use ad-veniō; and for 'in' say 'into,' as in § 41, l. 10. Note that ad-veniō takes the same construction as veniō: the Romans spoke of arriving to a place, not of arriving at it.
2 Say 'of cavalry and infantry forces,' and make 'who' agree in Gender with 'forces.'
3 Use inquit.
4 Say 'at that (eo) time, when.'
5 Say 'shall have arrived' (Future Perfect tense).
6 Say 'into.'
Quot sunt viri in illa cohorte quae heri ad Promunturium Spea Bonae adventit?
Circiter octingenti sunt numero.
Quando ceterae cohortes adveniet?
Intra hunc mensem, ut speramus. Sed non statim cum Batavis pugnabitur; nam ducenta fere milia passuum sunt inter Portum Natalem et Castra Mariana. Atque cum exercitus contra hostem mittitur, non universi milites pugnando operam dant; maximae partis eorum necesse est vias custodire, castella munire, pontes defendere, ceteris rebus operam dare.

43. [Verbs in iō with Infinitive in ere—Present, Past Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
'I desire to take the camp,'
'I desired to take the camp,'
'I shall desire to arrive home,'
in omnibus personis temporum Praesentis, Praeteriti-imperfecti, Futuri Activi.
Redde Latine—'What are you doing?' 'What were you doing?' 'What will you do?' 'Many letters are (were, will be) received by me every-day.'

(B) A Letter from Antony to his father.

My dearest Father,¹

The letter which you wrote on November 5th arrived yesterday. I feel very-great grief on-account-of the reverse of which you speak. We read in the newspapers that the Boers greatly desire to take Ladysmith. When shall I receive another letter from you? I desire to hear more about Ladysmith. What are you yourself doing? What will you and my mother

---

¹ Say 'Antony to his dearest father greeting.'
² Say 'on the Nones of November.'
³ Use capiō, as in § 43, l. 9.
⁴ 'of' here means 'about.'
⁵ 'I read that... is expressed like 'I say that,' 'I hear that,' 'I know that.' This sentence, then, will have two Infinitives in it, the second depending on the first.
⁶ Use alter, altera, alterum.
⁷ Say 'more things' (piūra), cp. § 32, l. 12.
do, if the Boers overrun our Colony? I write this letter on the 24th of November. Farewell.

44. [Verbs in iō with Infinitive in ere—Perfect Stems.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
' I have received a letter from (ex) South Africa,'
' I have made an attack on (in) the enemy (Accus.),'
' I had put (conièceram) the enemy to flight,'
' I shall have dug a pit,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(B) We had received the news about the siege of Kimberley and of Mafeking in the month of October. The Boers began to besiege Mafeking on the 13th of October. A few days after they had surrounded Kimberley with their forces, and had dug trenches round the town. On October 16th they began to bombard Mafeking. They did not bombard Kimberley before November 8th. Although the Boers have thrown an immense number of missiles into these towns, they have not killed many of our men. On October 27th our men made a very-brave attack upon the Boers who were besieging Mafeking, and took one of the trenches.

45. [Verbs in iō with Infinitive in ere—continued.]

The trenches which the Boers had dug round Mafeking were only a mile distant from the town. And they had brought-up very-big guns for the sake of causing panic to the inhabitants. But the British Colonel who is-in-command-of the town does not fear the Boers. When the Dutchman bade him surrender the town for the sake of avoiding slaughter, he answered, laughing, "Please," when will the slaughter begin?"

---

1 Use the Future Perfect tense.
2 Imitate § 20, l. 15 (paucis annis ante); 'after' will be post.
3 Say 'to throw missiles into.'
4 Imitate § 45, l. 12.
5 The Nouns in -ndum formed from Verbs in iō end in -iendum; thus faciendum, 'the making,' 'the causing.'
6 The Active Adjectives formed from Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in -ens.
7 Use quaesō, and put it after the other verb, as in § 32, l. 1.
8 Use the Passive ('will be begun').
46. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

Afterwards he wrote to the Boers in \(^1\) the following fashion:

"This town cannot be taken\(^2\) by sitting-down \(^3\) and looking at it.\(^4\) Why do you not come and take it? But you cannot. Go \(^5\) home, therefore, to your farms. You will be sorry some day, if you do not listen\(^6\) to me. For we shall soon have taken the capitals of your Republics." On October 21st he sent this message to our commander-in-chief: "All is well.\(^7\) They have bombarded\(^8\) the town for four hours. We have lost one dog."

47. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

(A) What is the name of our most merry Colonel? The first letters of his name are B.P. On holidays\(^9\) when the Boers do not bombard the town, our men play cricket and football.\(^10\) When the Boers begin to bombard, a signal is given by a bell, and all the inhabitants of the town, men, women and children, retire\(^11\) into pits, which they have dug in the earth. There are only about nine hundred soldiers in the town, which is besieged by about five thousand Boers. Sometimes our men make very brave attacks upon the Boers and drive them out of their trenches.

(B) Conversation. (The first speaker is the pupil.)

Num quid novi est hodie ex Africa Meridiana?
Nonne audivisti de tertia clade, quam nostri acceperunt?
Non audivi. Dic mihi, quaeso. Ubi accepta est?
Hic mensis nobis ater fuit. Non plus quam sex dies sunt ex quo duae clades nuntiatae sunt; hodie de tertia et fortasse maiore clade ex Terra Natali nuntium accepmus. Sed de hac re non libenter dico. In actis diurnis legere potes.

Num nostri non bene pugnaverunt?

---

1 Imitate § 13, ll. 1, 2.
2 Use *capiō* (Passive Infinitive).
3 Use the Ablative of the Noun in *-ndum* formed from *sedēō*.
4 Say 'by looking' (without 'at it'). Similarly in the next sentence omit 'it'.
5 Say 'betake yourselves' ('yourselves' — *vōs*).
6 Say 'shall not have listened' (Future Perfect).
7 Say 'all-things have themselves well'; cp. § 22, l. 7.
8 See Ex. 44 (B), note 3.
9 Use the Ablative of *diēs fēriāti*, without a Preposition.
10 Say 'give attention to the ball and the football'; or 'play (use *lūdē* 3rd Conj.) with the ball and the football.'
11 Say 'betake themselves.'
Impetus fortissimos per totum diem in hostes fecerunt; sed frustra. Tugelam non traiecerunt. Plus quam mille viros amissimus.

Magnum capio dolorem.
Nondum omnia audivisti. Batavi decem vel undecim ex tormentis nostris ceperunt.
Quomodo ceperunt?
Fossas in ripis Tugelae foderant, unde imbre mortiferum missilium in ordines nostros conicerunt. Itaque tormenta defensoribus nudata sunt.
Nonne nostri tormenta receperunt?
Duo ex tormentis parva manus nostrorum summa virtute recepit; sed cetera non recepimus.
Num Castra Mariana iam obsidione liberari poterunt?
Nescio.

48. [Present Injunctive of sum.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
'May I be victorious (victor, Plur. victōrēs),
'May I be helpful (prōsim) to the republic,'
in omnibus personis Praesentis Iniuictivi.

(B) During the siege the Colonel does not take much sleep.¹
In the silence of the night he often walks round the town or in the veldt, for the sake of exploring.² He has written these verses—

If we go forward,³ we die; ⁴
If we go backward,⁵ we die;
Better go forward and die.⁶

May it be well with ⁷ you, most-brave Colonel! May it be well with ⁷ the little town, which you are defending! May you be victorious!⁸ May we all be victorious with you!

¹ Say 'much of sleep,' like aliquid novī, § 37, l. 2.
² Use the Noun in -ndum formed from the Verb explōrō.
³ For 'go forward' say 'advance' (prōcurrō). Use the Present tense, because 'if' means 'if at any time' or 'whenever.'
⁴ Say 'we are killed' (Passive of interficiō).
⁵ For 'go back' say 'retire' ('take ourselves back': nōs recipimus).
⁶ Say 'It is better to advance and to be killed:' cp. § 18, ll. 14, 15.
⁷ Use the Dative Case ('to you' instead of 'with you').
⁸ Say 'a conqueror,' 'a victor.'
49. [Present Injunctive of the 1st Conjugation.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

'May I save (salvum praestem) the army,'

'Let me not (nē) fear,'

in omnibus personis Praesentis Injunctivi.

(B) May our army soon raise the siege of Mafeking¹ and Kimberley and Ladysmith! May the brave defenders of these towns endure the siege until help arrives!² Let us not fear! Let us await the victory of our men with a calm mind! And in distant lands, where Britannia's sons have founded great colonies, let all men with one voice exclaim, "Rule Britannia!³ Long may our Empire stand! Long may our Queen reign!"

50. [Present Subjunctive of sum and 1st Conjugation.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

'I am marching (iter fació) in order that I may save the town,'

'I shall try (operam dabó) to storm the town,'

'I am letting-out the gas, in-such-a-way (iīa) that the balloon may be brought-to-land,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum Indicativi et Subiunctivi, nisi quod in tertia sententia una tantum persona Subjunctivi dici potest.

(B) A British army is marching in-order-that Kimberley may be saved.⁴ And another British army is fighting on⁵ the Tugela in-order-that the siege of Ladysmith may be raised.⁶ The Dutch general who is besieging Kimberley says "Surrender the town, in order that the slaughter of women and children may be avoided." But our Colonel, who is defending the town, says "Come and take it, if you can." The Dutch general, however, is not trying to⁷ storm the town. His plan is to starve out the inhabitants.⁸

---

¹ Say 'free Mafeking from siege,' as in § 44, l. 6.
² Say 'shall have arrived' (Future Perfect of advenió).
³ Say 'let Britannia be mistress of the waves.'
⁴ Use salvus, a, um for 'saved.'
⁵ Use ad with the Accusative.
⁶ Say 'in-order-that Ladysmith may-be-freed from siege.'
⁷ Use the Imperative for 'come' and 'take'; and omit 'it.'
⁸ Use operam dō ut, as in § 50, ll. 3 and 4.
⁹ Say 'to conquer (Infinitive) the inhabitants by want.'
EXERCISES

51. [Present Subjunctive of *sum* and 1st Conjugation—continued.]

(A) Meanwhile our men who are defending Kimberley are manufacturing a cannon in-order-that they may be able\(^1\) to throw missiles against the big cannons of the Boers. Food is so dear that eggs cost twenty-five shillings a dozen,\(^2\) and a fowl costs twenty shillings. So great is the want that the inhabitants are living on horse-flesh. Sometimes they climb-up onto\(^3\) towers or other high buildings of the town in order that they may watch\(^4\) the veldt. For they hope that help is-at-hand.\(^5\) Sometimes they see a cloud-of-dust, sometimes the balloon of a British army.

(B) *Conversation.* (The speakers are two boys—Antony and Mark.)

Salvus sis, Marce! Legistine de Adamantopoli?
Num obsidione liberata est?
Obsidione liberata est.
Euge, optime! Quis liberavit?
Dux noster cui cognomen est *French*.
Quomodo liberavit?
Nonne scis eum iam multos dies ei rei operam dedisse?
Nonne scis eum virum esse qui hostes superet cum ei rei operam det?
Scio.
Is vir vincere scit.
Prosit ei! Opportune accidit quod non obsidetur.
Non obsidetur quia ex oppido ad Tugelam sito se recipere sciebat antequam Batavi obsidionem inceperunt.
Victor sit omnium hostium! Castra Mariana quoque obsidione liberet!

Spero.
Vale.
Vale.

\(^1\) Form the Present Subjunctive of *pos-sum* by adding *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, *sinus*, *silis*, *sint* to *pos*.
\(^2\) Say 'that twelve eggs stand at five and twenty shillings'; imitate the construction in § 50, l. 19.
\(^3\) Say 'ascend onto'; cp. § 50, l. 27.
\(^4\) Use *spectō*.
\(^5\) Say 'help to-be-at-hand (*ad-esse*),' as after 'I sav,' 'I hear,' etc.
52. [Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the other Conjugations.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
‘Let me see-to-it (videam) that the army be saved (salvus),’
‘May I conquer (vincam) the enemy,’
‘May I soon hear about a victory,’
‘May I receive news about a victory,’
‘May I be there to see,’
in omnibus personis Praesentis Iniunctivi.

(B) May our commander-in-chief conquer the enemy! May he capture their whole army! He is sending-out men who shall-make an attack on them from the North, and others who shall block their way from the East. He himself is coming with a very-large army, in order that they may not march to the South. Let the Boers see-to-it that they be not captured! May Majuba day be not unlucky for us this year! May we soon hear about a victory, and rejoice! May Ladysmith never be taken!

53. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of sum.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—
‘I dug a trench in order that I might be safe (tūlus),’
‘I sent-out forces in order that I might be able to surround the enemy,’
‘I was marching in order that the town might be safe,’
in omnibus personis horum temporum Indicativi et Subjunctivi, nisi quod in ultima sententia una tantum persona Subjunctivi dici potest.

(B) Our commander-in-chief had sent-out a body of horsemen in order that Kimberley might be saved. The inhabitants had endured the siege so long that food was very-dear. But they had endured want most-bravely in-order-that the name of Kimberley might be great and famous. On December 10th a British army was only twenty miles away from the town, so that the inhabitants were-able to see the balloon. But on De-

1 Use captō.
2 Use faciō.
3 Say ‘who shall prevent them from-the-march,’ as in § 52, l. 8.
4 For ‘in order that . . . not ’ say ‘lest ’ (nē).
5 Say ‘the southern part’; cp. § 52, l. 6.
6 Time when.
7 Use salvus, a, um.
8 Form the Past Imperfect Subjunctive of pos-sum by adding -sem, -sēs, -sēl, -sēmus, -sēlis, -sent to pos-.
cember 11th the army suffered\(^1\) a great reverse, so that it was necessary to retire\(^2\) to the Modder River.

54. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th Conj.]

\((A)\) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

'I sent-out forces in order that I might raise the siege of the town,'

'I crossed the river in order that I might dislodge (locō movērem) the enemy,'

'I was trying (operam dabam) to conquer the enemy,'

'I had resolved to take the town,'

'I marched in order that I might guard the town,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum.

\((B)\) While one of our generals was fighting on the Modder River in order to surround the Boers as\(^3\) with a net, the other\(^4\) was trying most-bravely to raise the siege of Ladysmith. He had fought three great battles with the Boers in order to drive them from the hills which lie to the north of the River Tugela. And although he had not fought successfully, he had resolved to lead\(^5\) his men to the besieged town. The Boers were fighting in order that they might block his way.\(^6\) But our men very-cheerfully\(^7\) endured toil and death in order that Ladysmith might not\(^8\) be taken.

55. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive, continued.]

\((A)\) The Boers, too, had tried for four months to take Ladysmith. On January 6th they made a great attack in order to take the town by storm.\(^9\) But the brave men who were defending Caesar's Camp compelled them to retire.\(^{10}\) On December 8th six hundred of our men performed an act of great gallantry.\(^{11}\)

\(^1\) Say 'received.'

\(^2\) Say 'to take themselves back.'

\(^3\) velut; cp. § 53, l. 8.

\(^4\) alter; cp. § 54, l. 1.

\(^5\) Either say 'that he should lead,' as in § 54, ll. 21, 22, or use the Infinitive.

\(^6\) Say 'might prevent him from the march,' as in § 52, l. 8.

\(^7\) Say 'with most-cheerful mind,' as in § 54, l. 12.

\(^8\) For 'in order that ... not' use nē ('lest'), as in § 53, l. 8.

\(^9\) Use expugnō for 'to take by storm.'

\(^10\) Say 'that they should take themselves back.'

\(^11\) Imitate § 48, l. 9.
They marched out of the town by night in order to destroy one of the biggest guns of the Boers. Under the light of the moon, and with naked feet, they ascended the hill on which the gun stood. Suddenly the air trembles with fire and thunder.\(^1\) The gun is nowhere seen,\(^2\) for it has tumbled into the pit which the Boers had dug. Only one of our men was wounded on that night.

\(^{(B)}\) Conversation.

**Marcus.** Salvus sis, Antoni! Audivistine de Castris Marianis obsidione liberatis?

**Antonius.** Salvus sum, Marce; nam audivi. Omnes pueri audiverunt. Sed ecce Alexander ad nos currit.

**Alexander.** Audivistisne, Marce et Antoni, Castra Mariana obsidione liberata esse?

**M. et Ant.** Audivimus.

**Alex.** Magister classis tertiae mihi dixit et imperavit ut vobis dicerem.

**Marc.** Non necesse erat ut imperaret.

**Alex.** Nonne dies feriatus nobis dabitur quo liberi simus scholis?

**Marc.** Dari oportet.

**Alex.** Nonne tota schola hac nocte ignibus festis illustrabitur? Quid dicis?


**Mag.** Nescio. Castra Mariana per quattuor menses ignibus illustrata sunt, sed non festis.

**Alex.** Nunc festis illustrabuntur. Sed quis ea obsidione liberavit?

**Mag.** Fabius ille noster qui—

Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem.

**Ant.** Quomodo liberavit?

**Mag.** Consilium cepit ut Tugelam ab oriente traiceret et impetum in collem Petreium faceret. Atque rem tam bene gessit ut heri manus equitum nostrorum in oppidum equitare posset. Tum finis obsidionis factus est. Nam Batavi se in fugam coniecerunt cum tormentis, vehiculis, ceteris.

**Alex.** Floreant Castra Mariana!

**Ant.** Vivat Buller!

**Marc.** Vivat Robertus noster, qui—

Unus homo nobis properando restituit rem.

---

\(^1\) Imitate § 46, l. 3.

\(^2\) Use conspiciō.
EXERCISES

56. [Injunctive and Imperative.]

God save ¹ our gracious ² Queen,
Long live ¹ our noble ³ Queen,
   God save the Queen.
Send ⁴ her victorious,⁵
Happy and glorious,
Long to reign ⁶ over us:
   God save the Queen.

Thy choicest gifts in store⁷
On her be pleased to pour,⁸
   Long may she reign.⁹
May she defend our laws,¹⁰
And ever give us cause¹¹
To cry with loud applause¹²
   God save the Queen.

¹ Use the Injunctive; cp. § 49, l. 29. [For 'live' in l. 2 use flōreō, 2nd Conj., or vivō, 3rd Conj.]
² Use benignus, a, um.
³ Use optimus, a, um.
⁴ Use the Imperative or Injunctive of reddō ('render').
⁵ Use victrix (victīc-).
⁶ Say 'in order that she may long reign (imperiō) over-us (Dat.).'
⁷ Say 'thy best gifts,' using dōnum (2nd Decl., neuter) for 'gift'; and leave out 'in store.'
⁸ Say 'mayest thou give to her.'
⁹ Use regnō.
¹⁰ The Latin for 'law' is lex (lēg-), 3rddecl., fem.
¹¹ For 'and ever give us cause to cry' say 'in-order-that we may always (semper) exclaim.'
¹² For 'with loud applause' say 'with one voice.'
DOMINE SALVUM FAC REGEM.

(A Latin version of "God save the King," arranged for singing.)*

Vivat Rex optimus!
Fac nobis, o Deus,
    Regem salvum.
Illi sit gloria,
Laus et victoria;
Tu semper sospita
    Regem nostrum.

Exsurgas, o Deus,
Hostes ut dissipes,
    Et pessum des.
Vindex sis fraudium
Tu nobis omnium;
Spem nostram, Te Deum
    Imploramus.

Tu Regi munera
Da quae sint optima;
    Late regnet.
Leges defendito,
Ut semper gaudio
    Cantemus publico,
Salvus sit Rex.

* The metre of this Latin version is the same as that of the original: and its quantities correspond to those of the musical notes of the familiar tune.

The following words, which have not appeared in the text of Pro Patria, are used:

Vtvere, to live; fac, imperative of faciō; sospitāre, to preserve, protect; exsurgere, to arise; dissipāre, to scatter; pessum dare, to make to fall (lit. to send to the bottom); vindex, avenger; fraus (fraud-), fraud, injury; mūnus (mūner-), gift; lātē, widely, far and wide; lex (lēg-), law; défenditō, 3rd Pers. Sing. of the imperative of défendō; publicus, a, um, public.
ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

I. LATIN—ENGLISH.

The words printed in ordinary type are words which have occurred in Ora Maritima and which will therefore be familiar to pupils who have used that book. The words printed in black type are the new words which occur in this book. The references put after each word (whether printed in black type or not) are references to those sections of the present book (Pro Patria) in which the word or meaning occurs for the first time. These references will be found useful in recovering the meanings of words which have been forgotten. A second reference is given in some cases for special reasons. Words with no reference given are words that occur only in the conversations or in maps or pictures. English words in square brackets [and ordinary type] are words etymologically connected with the Latin words but not intended as translations of them. The Principal Parts given in the case of verbs are the 1st Pers. Sing. of the Present and Perfect tenses and the Passive Participle (Adjective) where it exists.

Words of the third declension have the stem inserted in brackets, except where it is the same as the Nom. Sing. (e.g. sōl). To words like navis the Gen. Plur. is given. Genders are given where irregular according to the rules given in Ora Maritima, p. 75 and p. 129 (m. = masculine, f. = feminine, n. = neuter).

The figures 1, 2, 3 denote the declension or conjugation: 'pl.' or 'plur.' denotes plural.

A.S.—Annō Salūtis, in the year of grace, § 56
ab or ā (with Abl.) from, § 2; by, § 16; ab oriente, from the east, on the east; ab occidente, from the west, on the west, § 51; compare § 52, ll. 7, 8
abhinc, adv. ago, § 25
ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī, I am distant, I am absent, § 7
ac-eldit, 3, -eldit, it happens, § 39
ac-eipiō; 3, -eipi, -eiptus, a, um, I receive, § 43
accūsō, 1, I accuse, § 27

ācer, ācris, ācre, 3, keen, § 4; ācerrimus, a, um, very keen, § 33; ācerrimus, very keenly, § 44
acta diurna, 2, plur., the newspapers, § 40
actus, a, um, driven, § 39; see agō
ad (with Acc.), to, § 2; for, § 9, § 17; towards, § 39; at or near, § 38
Adamanto-polis, 3, (Acc. -polīm, Abl. -poli), Kimberley, § 43 [the diamond city, from 'adamás,' adamanti, diamond, § 51]
adhūc, hitherto, § 8; still, § 10
admirābilis, 3, adj., admirable, § 49
admirātiō (-īōn-), 3, admiration, § 6
ad-mittō, 3, misl-, missus, a, um, I admit (lit. let go to), § 32
ad-ōrō, 1, I pray to, adore, worship, § 7
ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fui, I am present, § 1; I am here, § 12
adule centulus, 2, young man, § 17
ad-veniō, 4, -vēni, I arrive, come to, § 41
adventō, 1, I arrive, § 16; I draw near, § 28
adventus, 4, arrival, advent, § 27
adversus, a, um, adverse, § 49
aedificium, 2, building [edifice], § 1
aedificō, 1, I build, § 16
Aedibeuctus, 2, Ethelbert, § 25
aegrōtō, 1, I fall sick, § 20
aequus, a, um, even, calm, equal, § 54
aēr- (aer-), 3, m., air, § 46: gas, § 50
āerius, a, um, of the air, aerial: nāvis aëriā, balloon, § 50
aes (aer-), 3, n., copper or brass, § 36
aestās (aestāt-), 3, summer
aetās (-āt-), 3, age, § 4; old age, time, § 22
affirmō, 1, I affirm, state, declare, § 2
af-fulgeō, 2, -fulsi, I shine on, I dawn on, § 55.
Āfrica, 1, Africa, § 31
Āfricānus, a, um, African, § 31; Africa, § 38
ager, agr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, field, § 16
agmen (-mīn-), 3, column, army on the march, § 46
agō, 3, σφι, actus, a, um, I drive, § 39; I do, § 46, I render, § 56
agricola, 1, farmer, § 33
Agricola (Īlius), a governor of Britain, § 1

alacer, alaebris, alacre, 3, eager, § 1
Alexander, Alexandr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, Alexander, § 1
aliquandō, some day, § 8; at last, § 18
aliquis (m., f.), alliquid (n.), some one, something, § 1, § 37
alias, alia, aliud, other [Gen. Sing. alias, Dat. Sing. alii], § 4; alias, ... alias, the one...
... the other, § 46
allelūia, hallelujah, § 27
altē, adv., deep, high, § 22
alter, altera, alterum, another, a second, § 11 (Gen. Sing. alterius, Dat. Sing. alterius)
altitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, height, altitude, § 22
altus, a, um, high, lofty [altitude], § 22; deep, § 23
ambulātiō (-īōn-), 3, walk, § 22
ambulō, 1, I walk, § 1
amicus, 2, friend, § 1
amita, 1, aunt, § 18
ā-mittō, 3, -mīsi, -missus, a, um, I lose (lit. let go away), § 38
amō, 1, I love, like, § 7
amor (amōr-), 3, love, § 49
amphítheātrum, 2, amphitheatre, § 15
amplius (Neuter Comparative of amplus, a, um), more, § 2
angelicus, a, um, angelic, § 28
angelus, 2, angel, § 28
Anglia, 1, England, § 25
Anglicus, a, um, English, § 1, § 24
Anglus, 2, Englishman, § 21; Angle, § 24
angulus, 2, angle, corner, § 12
animus, 2, mind, § 1
Annālēs, 3, pl., the Annals, a work of Tacitus, § 1
annus, 2, year [annual], § 2
ante (with Acc.), before, § 1; as adverb, § 20
antequam, before=before the time when, § 26
antiquus, a, um, ancient, § 1
ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

Antōnius, 2, Antony (the writer of these commentaries), § 52
anxius, a, um, anxious, § 52
(animō anxius, anxious in mind)
apertus, a, um, open, § 44, § 56
applicō, i, I bring to land [apply], § 23
ap-portō, i, I bring up, § 9
appropinquo, i, I approach, § 13
aptus, a, um, fitted [apt], § 17
apud (with Acc.), in the house of (=French chez), § 1; in the writings of, § 17; among, § 46
aqua, i, water [aquarium], § 23; of the water-clock, aqua aha-ret, the clock stops, §§ 24, 25; aquam perdō, I waste time, § 32
aquila, i, eagle, § 44
āra, i, altar, § 4
ārea, i, open space [area], § 23
argentēus, a, um, made of silver, § 27
arma, 2, neut. plur., arms, § 1
armātūra, i, armour, § 38
ars (art-), 3, art, § 15
a-scendō, 3, -scendi, I ascend, § 38 (lit. climb up to, from ad- and scandō; cf. dē-scendi)

ätcr, ātra, ātrum, dark, ill-o mened, § 30
atque, and also, aye and, § 4
ātrium, 2, hall
atrox (atrōce-), 3, adj., horrible, § 13
audācia, i, courage, audacity, § 6
audax (audāce-), 3, adj., audacious, bold, courageous, § 5
audiō, 4, I hear, § 40
Augustinus, 2, Augustine, first archbishop of Canterbury, died A.D. 604
Aulus Plautius, a Roman general of the time of Claudius, § 5
aureus, a, um, golden
auscultō, i, I listen, § 8
Australīa, i, Australia, § 51
Australiensis, e, 3, Australian, § 49
aut, or; aut ... aut, either ... or, § 17
autem, however, moreover, and, § 1
auxilium, 2, help, aid; auxiliō esse, to be a help, § 39; auxiliia (plur.), auxiliaries, § 4
ā-vertō, 3, -verti, -versus, a, um, I avert, lit. turn away (cf. Engl. 'avert'), § 52

B
balneae, i, pl., baths, § 15
barbarus, a, um, barbarous, § 15
basilica, i, basilica, church, § 15
Batāvus, a, um, Dutch; Batāvus, 2, a Dutchman, § 11; the Dutchman [Cronje], § 45
Bēda, i, Bede, § 27
Belgae, i, pl., Belgians, a tribe in the north of Gaul and also in South Britain (Hampshire), § 34
bellicōsus, a, um, warlike, § 5
bellō, i, I wage war, § 5
bellum, 2, war, § 2
bellus, a, um, jolly [French bel, belle], § 29; Mons Bellus, Belmont, on the frontier of the Orange River Colony, § 44
bene, well, § 37
beneficium, 2, benefit, service, § 56
benignus, a, um, kind, § 25
Bereta, i, Bertha, § 25
bls, adv., twice, § 54
Bodotria, i, Forth (firth of), § 4
bonus, a, um, good, § 4
bōs (bov-), 3, irregular in some cases; m. or f., ox, § 50
Boudicca, i, the proper form of the name Boadicea, queen
of the Iceni, § 8. In Celtic
Boudica means something
like ‘Victorina’ or ‘Victo-
ria’
brevis, e, 3, adj., brief, short, § 56
Brigantës, 3, a tribe in the north
of Britain, § 11

Britannia, 1, Britain, § 1
Britannicus, a, um, British, § 3:
name of a son of Claudius,
§ 5
Britannus, 2, Briton, § 2

captivus, 2, captive, § 2; prisoner,
§ 53
captō, 1, I catch, § 9
caput (capit-), 3, n., head, capital, § 3; chapter, § 1
Caratacus, 2, the correct form
of the name Caractacus
(Celtic Caradog), § 3. The
form Caractacus is a mis-
take due to one inferior MS.
of Tacitus. We have the
same Celtic root in ‘Mac-
Carthy’
carmen (-min-), 3, poem, § 17;
hymn, § 27
card (carn-), 3, f., flesh, § 50
Carthusianus, a, um, Carthusian;
Domus Carthusiana, Charter-
house School, § 56
cārus, a, um, dear, § 4; expensive
§ 51
casa, 1, cottage, § 13
Cassi, 2, a tribe in Hertford-
shire, § 7
Cassivellaunus, 2, King of the
Cassi in Hertfordshire, § 2
castellum, 2, fort, § 11; castle,
§ 18; castle-town, § 42
castra, 2, neut. pl., camp, § 5;
Castra Mariāna, Ladysmith,
§ 38; for the explanation of
the Adjective ‘Mariāna’ see
under the letter M. Caesaris
Castra, Caesar’s camp, an out-
post of Ladysmith, § 50

catēna, 1, chain, § 6
causa, 1, cause, reason, § 12; causa, by reason, for the sake, § 9
celebrer, celebris, celebre, 3, celebrated, § 1; crowded, frequented, § 9
celeriter, quickly
Celticus, a, um, Celtic, § 21
cêna, I, supper, late dinner, § 24
cënð, I, I sup, dine, § 18
centum (indecl.), a hundred, § 3
centuria, I, company of soldiers, § 100 men [century], § 53
cēreus, 2, wax taper, candle, § 23
certâmen (-min-), 3, contest, § 17
cervínus, a, um, of a stag (Dutch 'elant'), § 38
cēteri, ae, a, the others, the rest, § 6;
—Eng. 'et cetera,' § 32
Christiānus, a, um, Christian, § 25
Christus, 2, Christ, § 3
cibus, 2, food, § 43
Cimbricus, a, um, Cimbrian; paeninsula Cimbrica, Jutland, Denmark, § 24
circiter, about, § 44
circum (Preposition with Acc.; or Adverb), around, § 23
circum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datus, a, um, I surround, § 13
clavis (Gen. Plur. clavium), 3, citizen, § 32
clavitās (-tāt-), 3, state [city], § 2;
citizenship, § 32.
clādēs, 3, disaster, § 8
clārus, a, um, famous, § 6 [Clara]
classiārii, 2, plur., seamen, men of the fleet, marines, § 39, § 44
classis (Gen. Pl. classium), 3, fleet, § 11; class, § 33
Claudiānus, 2, a Roman poet of the 4th century A.D.
Claudius, 2, Claudius, the fourth Roman emperor, § 5
clemens (clément-), 3, clement, merciful, § 10
clīvus, 2, hill, down, § 26
Clōta, 1, Clyde, Firth of Clyde, § 11

cō-actus, a, um, compelled, § 39
(see cōgō)
cōgitō, I, I think, meditate, § 2
co-gnātus, 2, kinsman, § 34 (co- with, gnātus—nātus, born)
co-gnōmen (-min-), 3, sur-name, additional name (co- with, gnōmen—nōmen), § 31
co-gō (-co-agō), 3, co-āgl, co-actus, a, um, I compel; with Infin. § 39; with ut and Subj. § 54
cohors (cohort-), 3, cohort (—about 500 men; one-tenth part of a legion), § 11; battalion (—eight companies; about 800 men), § 38
col-līgō, 3, -lēgi, -lectus, a, um, I collect (con. together, legō, I gather), § 36
collis (Gen. Pl. collium), 3, m., hill, § 13
col-locātus, a, um, having been placed, § 6
col-locō, I, I place [locate], § 5
colō, 3, colūl, cultus, a, um, I cultivate, § 32
colōnia, I, colony, settlement, § 5; Cape Colony, § 38
colōnus, 2, tiller of the soil, settler, Boer, § 32
columba, 1, pigeon, § 43
commemorō, I, I mention [commemorate], § 3
commentāriī, 2, pl., notes, commentaries, § 36
com-meō, I, I go there and back, I travel, § 18
com-mittō, 3, -mist-, -missus, a, um, I engage in [commit, commission], § 39
com-moveō, 2, -móvi, -móitus, a, um, I move, stir [commotion], § 28
com-mūnīō (-lōn-), 3, community, partnership, § 34, § 56
com-mūnīs, e, 3, common, § 56
com-parō, 1, I get together, prepar.
com-pellō, 3, -pull, -pulsus, a, um, 
I drive together [compel, compulsion], § 40
con-clāmō, 1, I proclaim aloud, § 53
con-cordia, 1, concord, harmony, 
friendliness, § 56
con-discipulus, 2, school-fellow, § 43
con-dō, 3, -dīdī, -ditus, a, um, I 
found (con-, together, dō, I put), § 35
confūsus, a, um, confused, mingled 
together (from con-fundō), § 46
con-gregō, 1, I gather together [con- 
gregation], § 11
con-lecīō (-con-lecīō), 3, -leći, 
-lectus, a, um, I throw : in 
fugam con., I put to flight, § 44
con-scribō, 3, -scrīpsi, scriptus, 
a, um, I enrol (lit. write 
together, hence ‘conscript’), 
§ 36
con-secrō, 1, I consecrate, immor- 
talize, § 10
con-servō, 1, I preserve [con- 
serve, conservative], § 56
consilium, 2, counsel, plan, policy, 
§ 5
con-sociō, 1, I ally, unite, § 3; 
consociātus, a, um, united, 
§ 38
con-spicīō, 3, -spexi, -spectus, a, 
um, I catch sight of, discern, 
see, § 46
con-stītūō, 3, -stītul, -stītūtus, a, 
um, I fix, determine [con- 
stitute, con-stituation], § 50; 
constituō ut (with Subj.), I 
resolve that, § 54
con-stō, -stāre, -stīt, I consist [con, 
together, stō, I stand]; I cost, 
§ 50; constat (3rd person) 
—is known, § 24
consultum, 2, resolution, § 37
con-tendō, 3, -tendi, I strive, con- 
tend, § 46
con-tineō, 2, -tinui, -tentus, a, um, 
I contain, hold together (con,

Vocabulary

Together, teneō, I hold); 
passive with Abl.—depend 
on, § 56
contrā (with Acc.), against, § 4
contrārius, a, um, contrary, con- 
tradictory, § 56
contumēlla, 1, insult, § 32
con-vocō, 1, I call together, § 6
cōpia, abundance, § 9
cōpiae (plur.), forces, § 2
Coritāni, 2, plur., a British tribe 
in Lincolnshire, § 8
corvēnī, 4, horn, wing (of a build- 
ing, § 23; of an army, § 47)
corpus (corpor-), 3, body [corpor- 
al], § 13; a political body, 
§ 49
cotiddē, adv., every day, § 1
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, crowded 
(Abl.—with), frequent, § 41
cremātus, a, um, burned, § 13
cremō, 1, I burn [cremation], § 8
creeō, 1, I create, § 2
crūdōlls, o, 3, adj., cruel, § 8
crux (crue-), 3, cross, § 23; crux 
Victrīana, the Victoria Cross, 
§ 56
culina, 1, kitchen
cum (with Abl.), together with, 
with, § 5
cum, when, § 3
cunctando, by delaying (from 
cunctor, I delay), § 49
cunctī, ae, a, plur., all together 
(from co-uncii), § 56
cuniculus, 2, underground passage, 
tunnel, mine (properly rabbit- 
hole), § 23
Cunobelinus, 2, Cymbeline, a 
British king, § 3
cupidus, a, um, desirous, eager, § 6
cupīō, 3, cupīvi, cupitus, a, um, 
I desire, § 43
cūr, why, § 18
cūra, 1, care, § 2
cūrō, 1, I care for, attend to, mind, 
§ 32; with ut—take care that. 
§ 52
ALPHABETICAL

currō, 3, cu-ruli, I run [current—running water], § 49; (of Time), run out, pass, § 32
cursus, 4, course, § 24

custōdiō, 4, I guard, keep, preserve, § 40
custōs (custō-), 3, keeper, guard, § 23; Custōdes Régalés, the Guards, § 44.

D

dē (with Abl.), about, § 1; down from, or from, § 28
dē-bellātus, a, um, defeated, conquered (lit. warred down), § 4
dē-belliō, I defeat, war down, § 2
dē-beō, 2, dē-bul, dē-bitus, a, um, I owe (from dē-habeō), § 56
dē-cēdō, 3, -cessi, I depart, decease; with Abl. —from, § 56
decem (indeclinable), ten, § 9
December, bris, bre, 3, of December, § 43
decimus, a, um, tenth, § 2
decus (decor-), 3, distinction [decor-ation], § 56
dē-dō, 3, -didi, -ditus, a, um, I surrender, § 39
dē-dučeō, 3, -duxi, -ductus, a, um, I draw away, withdraw [de-duct], § 37
dē-fendō, 3, -fendi, -fensus, a, um, I defend, § 35
dēfensor (défensor-), 3, defender, § 4
dē-lēō, 3, -lēi, -lactus, a, um, I desert, forsake; (in the 3rd person) it runs short, comes to an end, § 43
dēinde, adv., thereupon, next, § 5, § 18
dēlectō, 1, I delight, § 1; Passive, I am delighted, I am interested, §§ 16, 17
dēleō, 2, dēlēvi, dēlēt-us, a, um, I destroy, § 22
dēnārius, 2, a Roman silver coin—one shilling, § 50
dēnegō, 1, I deny, refuse, § 32
densus, a, um, dense, thick
dēplōrō, 1, I deplore, lament, § 48

dēportō, 1, I carry off, deport, § 5
dē-scendō, 3, -scendi, I descend, lit. climb down, § 50
dē-spērō, 1, I despair, § 49; with Accusative, I despair of, § 53
dē-sum, dē-esse, dē-fui, I am wanting, § 1
dētrimentum, 2, loss, harm, detriment: quid dētrimenti, any harm, lit anything of harm, anything in the way of harm, § 52
deus, 2, god, § 7; deus (Voc. Sing.), § 27, l. 21, dī (Nom. Plur.), § 8
Dēva, 1, Chester, § 5
dexter, dextra, dextrum, right, § 23
dextra, 1, right hand, § 17
dic, say (Imperative of dicō)
dicō, 3, dixi, dictus, a, um, I tell, say, speak, § 32; I declare, § 34
dīs, 5, generally m., day, § 29
dīmallus, 0, 3, difficult, § 1; Superlative difficillimus, a, um, § 54
diligenter, adv., diligently, § 37
discipulus, 2, pupil [disciple], § 33
discordia, 1, quarrel, discord, § 31
disputō, 1, I dispute, § 19
di-stō, 1, I am distant, § 42
diu, long, for a long time, § 43
diurnus, a, um, of the day, § 40
diversus, a, um, diverse, different, § 21 (ā, from)
dividō, 3, divisi, divisus, a, um, I divide, § 33
divisus, a, um, dividēd, § 4 (Adj. formed from dividēd)
dōnec, until, § 49
Druidae, i, pl., Druids, § 7
Dubrae, i, pl., Dover, § 16
ducentī, ae, a, two hundred, § 42
dūcō, duxī, ductus, a, um, I draw, derive, § 33; I lead, § 36; via dūcit, the way leads, § 44
dulcis, 3, adj., sweet, pleasant, § 47
dum, while, § 1
duo, duae, duo (Gen. duōrum, duārum; Dat., Abl. duōbus, duābus), two, § 1
duodecim (indeclinable), twelve, § 36
duodecimus, a, um, twelfth, § 6
duodecōctōgēsimus, a, um, seventy-eighth, § 10
duodecēsimus, a, um, twenty-eighth, § 45
duodecēsimus, a, um, eighteenth, § 47
duodevīgintī (indeclinable), eighteen, § 35
Durovernium, 2, Canterbury, § 25
dux (duc-), 3, leader, general, § 1

divus, a, um, divine, deified, § 2:
an adjective applied to emperors after their death; the Romans used to worship
them as gods
dō, dare, dedī, I give, § 1; I put
(mortī, to death, § 3; in fugam, to flight, § 13; in viam, to the road, § 18, § 29); I send
(litterās, a letter, § 31); I deliver (impetum, an attack, § 50)
docēō, 2, docui, doctus, a, um, I teach [doctor—teacher], § 25
doctus, a, um, learned, taught
[doctor], § 19
dolor (dolor-), 3, grief, § 43
domesticus, a, um, internal [domestic]; bellum domesticum,
civil war, § 2
domi, at home, § 29, § 49
domina, 1, mistress [dame], § 36
domō, 1, domul, domitus, a, um, I subdue, § 56
domum, homewards (home), § 18
domus (irregularly declined, see Preparations, § 27), i., home,
§ 25; house, § 27

eborācum, 2, York, § 20
ecce, behold, § 8
educētūs, a, um (from educō, i), educated, § 56
ē-ducō, 3, -duxi, -ductus, a, um,
I lead out, § 47
ē-fundō, 3, -fūdi, -fūsus, a, um,
I pour out [ē-fus-ive, confuse], § 40
ego, I, § 17.
ēgregius, a, um, excellent, § 47;
eminent, distinguished, § 48
ēlapsus, a, um, elapsed, slipped
away, § 1
ē-mittō, -misi, -missus, a, um,
I send out, § 40; I let out,
§ 50

eō, behold, here is, § 36
enim, for, § 41
ēō, adv., thisher, § 43
Eptieicus, 2, brother of Cuno-
belinus, § 3
eques (equit-), 3, horse-soldier,
§ 38
equester, tris, tre, 3, cavalry
(used as an adj.), equestrian,
§ 2
equinus, a, um, of a horse; carō
equina, horse-flesh, § 50;
Mons Equinus, Paardeberg
(horse-mountain), § 53
equitō, 1, I ride, § 8
equus, 2, horse, § 6
error (errōr-), 3, error, mistake
### ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>(Pres. Infin. of sum, <em>I am</em>), to be, § 17</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essedum</td>
<td>2, chariot, § 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estō</td>
<td>(Imperative of sum, <em>I am</em>; 2nd or 3rd pers. sing.), be or <em>let there be</em>, § 49; granted, § 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et, and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etiam, also, even, § 15; etiam atque etiam, again and again, § 36, § 43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etōna</td>
<td>1, Eion, § 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eugē, bravo! (ē in Plautus), § 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europā, Europaeus, a, um, European, § 33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evādō, evāśi, I escape, § 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex (with Abl.), out of, from, § 1, § 9 (servō ex clāde); since, § 35; instead of, § 54, § 56, l. 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex quō, since, § 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excavō, I, I excavate, § 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exclāmo, I, I exclaim, § 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exemplum</td>
<td>2, example, § 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercētus</td>
<td>4, army, § 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>existimō</td>
<td>1, I consider [estimate], § 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expeditiō (-iōn-), 3, expedition, § 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explicō</td>
<td>1, I explain, § 1; deploy, arrange</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explōrātor</td>
<td>(explōrātor-), 3, scout [exploration], § 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explōrō, I, I explore, § 11; I investigate, § 50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expugnō</td>
<td>1, I storm, take by storm, § 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-scribō, -scripsi, -scriptus, a, um, I write out, copy, § 36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exspectātiō (-iōn-), 3, expectation, § 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exspectō, I, I expect, await, § 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exspirō, I, I expire, die, § 20; I breathe out, § 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-stō, -stāre, -stiti, I exist, remain, am extant, § 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fabius Maximus</td>
<td>2, a celebrated Roman general in the Second Punic War; called 'Cunctātor,' the Delayer, § 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabricō</td>
<td>1, I manufacture [fabricate], § 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabula</td>
<td>1, story, drama [fable], § 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facēs</td>
<td>5, face, form, § 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile</td>
<td>adv., easily, § 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facillus</td>
<td>1, easy, § 5; superlative facillimus, a, um (cf. difficillimus)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facinus (facinor-), 3, deed, achievement, exploit, § 12; facinus pulchrum et periculōsum, an act of great gallantry, § 48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciō, 3, fēci, factus, a, um, I make, do, § 43; I perform, § 48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falsus</td>
<td>2, shrive, § 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatigātus, a, um, tired [fatigued], fagged, § 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Februārius</td>
<td>a, um, of February, § 52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēmina</td>
<td>1, woman [hence 'feminine'], § 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fenestra</td>
<td>1, window, § 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferē</td>
<td>3, except, about, § 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēriae</td>
<td>1, pl., holidays, § 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēriātus, a, um, unemployed; dīēs feriātus, a holiday, § 30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferox (ferōc-), 3, adj., warlike</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferrātus, a, um, fitted with iron, shod with iron; via ferrāta, railway, § 50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferus, a, um, savage, fierce, § 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>festinō</td>
<td>1, I hurry, § 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>festus</td>
<td>a, um, jestal, festive; dīēs festus, a holy day, § 30; ornātus festus, holiday attire, § 50; ignēs festī, illuminations, fireworks, § 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidēs</td>
<td>5, faith, truth, loyalty, § 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidus</td>
<td>a, um, faithful, § 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>filia</strong>, 1, daughter, § 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>filius</strong>, 2 (Voc. fili, § 39), son, § 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>finis</strong>, 3, end, § 1; Plur. finēs, m., (Gen. finium), boundaries, territory, § 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>firmō</strong>, 1, I strengthen [make firm], § 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>firmus</strong>, a, um, firm, § 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>flāvus</strong>, a, um, yellow, § 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fōrōdī</strong>, 2, fōrulī, I flourish, § 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flōrifontium</strong>, 2, Bloemfontein (—Flower fountain), the capital of the Orange River Colony, § 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>flūmen</strong> (—min—), 3, river, § 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>flūtī</strong>, 3, fluxī, I flow, § 47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>focus</strong>, 2, hearth, home, § 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fōdiō</strong>, 3, fōdī, fossus, a, um, I dig, § 43. Hence comes the word ‘fossil’ (—a thing dug up)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>foedus</strong> (foeder—), 3, league [con- feder-ation], § 48 (heading), § 49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fōllis</strong> (Gen. Plur. follium), 3, m., a ball inflated with air, a football, § 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>forma</strong>, 1, form, shape, § 23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>formīdō</strong>, 1, I fear, § 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fortasse</strong>, perhaps, § 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>forte</strong>, adv., by chance, perchance, § 17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fortis</strong>, 3, adj., brave, strong, § 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fortitūdō</strong> (—tūdīn—), 3, fortitude, bravery, § 54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fortius</strong>, comp. adv., more bravely, § 54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fortūna</strong>, 1, fortune, fate, § 24; good fortune, § 48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>forum</strong>, 2, market-place, forum, § 15, § 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fossa</strong>, 1, trench, § 44 (from fōdiō, I dig)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>foveō</strong>, 2, fōvi, fōtus, a, um, I foster, § 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Francoi</strong>, 2, plur., Franks, § 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Francogallus</strong>, 2, a Frenchman, § 32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>frāter</strong> (frātr—), 3, brother, § 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fretum</strong>, 2, channel, straits, § 11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>frustrā, in vain</strong>, § 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fuga</strong>, 1, flight, § 13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fulisse</strong> (Perf. Inf. of sum, I am), to have been, § 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fundāmentum</strong>, 2, foundation, § 22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>furo</strong> (furōr—), 3, madness [fury], § 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**G**

| Gallia, 1, Gaul, § 2 |
| Gallicus, a, um, Gallic, § 4; fretum Gallicum, the English Channel |
| gallina, 1, hen, fowl, § 50 |
| gaudeō, 2 (Perf. Irreg.), I rejoice, § 22 |
| gaudium, 2, joy, delight, § 51 |
| geminō, 1, I double, I return (a ball), § 17 |
| gens (gent—), 3, tribe [gentile], § 3; nation, § 56 |
| genus (gener—), 3, kind [gener-al], § 40; race, § 56 |
| Germānia, 1, Germany, § 33; the name of a work of Tacitus, § 34 |
| Germānicus, a, um, Germanic, Teutonic, § 21 |
| germānus, 2, brother, § 34; germāna, 1, sister |
| Germānus, 2, a German, Teuton, § 32 |
| gerō, 3, gessī, gestus, a, um, I wear, carry, § 55; I wage, carry on (bellum, war), § 56 |
| glōriā, 1, glory, fame, § 56 |
| Graecus, a, um, Greek; Graecus, 2, a Greek, § 37 |
| grāmineus, a, um, grassy, § 26 |
| grandis, e, 3, adj., big, grand, § 6 |
ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

grátia, I, gratitude, thanks, § 51; gravitās agō, I return thanks, § 56
grátus, a, um, pleasing, § 18
Graupius, a, um, Grampian, § 11

graviter, adv., seriously, severely [gravely], § 38
Gregorius, 2, Gregory, § 25
gremium, 2, bosom, § 56
gustō, I, I taste, § 31

H

habeō, 2, habul, habitus, a, um, I have, § 22; bene me habeō, I am all right, § 22; I hold, § 24
habitō, I, I dwell, § 8
haeæ, 2, hæst, I stick, § 24
Helvētius, 2, a Swiss (noun), § 32
herl, adv., yesterday, § 42
heu, interjection, alas! § 28
Hibernia, 1, Ireland, § 19
Hibernicus, a, um, Irish, § 38
hic, adv., here, at this place, § 23
hic, hæc, hoc, this, § 10; hī vigintī dies, these (—the last) twenty days, § 44
hiems (hiem-), 3, winter
hilarus, a, um, cheerful, merry, hilarious, § 47
hinc, adv., hence, from this place, § 22
historia, I, history, § 1; Historiae (plur.), Histories, a work of Tacitus, § 34

historicus, a, um, historical, § 19
hodie, to-day, at the present day, nowadays, § 3
hodiernus, a, um, of the present day, § 17
homō (homin-), 3, man, § 2
honor or honōs (honōr-), 3, honour, § 24
hora, I, hour, § 1, § 18 (o’clock); —time, § 32
Horātius, 2 (Quintus Horātius Flaccus), a Roman poet of the age of Augustus, § 4
horridus, a, um, rugged, savage [horrid], § 38
hospitium, 2, inn
hostis (Gen. Plur. hostium), 3, enemy [hostile], § 4
hūe, adv., hither, to this place, § 25
hūiusmodi, of this kind, § 45
hūmānus, a, um, humane, kind, civilized, § 10; human, § 56
humō, I, I bury, § 56

I

laceō, 2, lacu-ī, I lie (—am situated), § 22, § 46
laclō, 3, lēel, lactus, a, um, I throw, § 43
lactō, I, I hurl, § 13
iam, already, § 6; iam tum, even then (—even at that early time), § 9; any longer (with a negative): nōn iam, no longer, not any longer; nullus iam, none any longer, § 50
iānua, I, door, gate, § 56
Iānūarius, a, um, of January, § 47

ibi, there, § 1
Iēnī, 2, plur., a British tribe in Norfolk, § 7
Idūs, 4, plur., Ides (about the middle of a month; the 13th or 15th day), § 30
ientāculum, 2, breakfast, § 18
igitur, therefore, then, § 1
ignāvus, a, um, cowardly, coward. § 7
ignis (Gen. Plur. ignium), 3, m., fire, flash, § 46
ignōro, I, I do not know [ignore]
### Alphabetical Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ignotus, a, um, unknown</td>
<td>§ 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ille, illa, illud, yon, that</td>
<td>§ 7; the great, the well-known, § 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illie, there, yonder</td>
<td>§ 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illustrō, 1, I illustrate, § 1; light up</td>
<td>§ 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imber (imbr-), 3, shower, rain</td>
<td>§ 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immūd, adv., on the contrary</td>
<td>§ 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperātor (imperātōr-), 3, commander, § 16; commander-in-chief</td>
<td>§ 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfectus, a, um, imperfect, incomplete</td>
<td>§ 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperitō, 1, I am emperor, § 3; I hold sway, § 8; with Dat. (=over), § 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperium, 2, empire, § 3; command, § 10, plur. § 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperō, I order, § 1; (with Dat.), I impose (upon), § 2; imperō ut (with Subjunctive), I order that (something shall be done), § 51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impetus, 4, assault, attack</td>
<td>§ 43; charge, § 44; fury, § 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impiger, impigra, impigrum, active (not sluggish), § 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impigřē, actively, bravely</td>
<td>§ 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implōrō, 1, I implore, § 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in (with Abl.), in or on, § 1; (with Acc.), into or onto, § 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-certus, a, um, un-certain</td>
<td>§ 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-clēdō, 3, -clīdī, I fall upon (with Dat.), § 39 [hence English 'incident']; I fall into (in insidiās), § 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-clōdō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, a, um, I begin, § 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incitō, 1, I urge, incite, § 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incola, 1, inhabitant, § 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-colō, 3, -colūlī, I inhabit, § 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incommodum, 2, mishabit, reverse, § 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indāgō (-gin-), 3, nat, § 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inde, thence</td>
<td>§ 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>index (indic-), 3, index</td>
<td>index verbūrum, vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicō, 1, I indicate, point out, § 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-dicō, 3, -dixi, -dictus, a, um, I declare (bellum, war), § 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferior (inferiōr-), 3, comp. adj., lower [inferior], § 24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-flō, 3, -fluxī, I flow in [influx], § 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-fundō, 3, -fūdī, -fūsus, a, um, I pour in [infuse, infusion], § 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingens (ingent-), 3, adj., huge, § 9</td>
<td>inhumānus, a, um, unkind, inhuman, § 14; uncivilized, § 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-humātus, a, um, un-buried, § 13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-iquus, a, um, un-favourable (in-, un-, aequus, equal, favourable), § 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initiō, 1, injury, wrong, § 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inopia, 1, want, § 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquam, say I, I say, § 21; inquit, says he, he says, § 6; inquimīmus, we say, § 18; inquiunt, they say, § 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-scribō, 3, -scriptī, -scriptus, a, um, I inscribe, write an inscription, § 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insidiae, 1, plur., ambush, trap, § 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-sidō, 3, -sēdī, -sessus, a, um, I settle on, am perched on, § 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insigne, 3 (declined like mare), distinction, badge [ensign], § 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insignis, e, 3, distinguished, § 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-stō, -stāre, -stīti, I am at hand, § 30 (with Dat.); I pursue, § 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insula, 1, island, § 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-sum, -ful, -esse, I am in, § 1; sometimes with Dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intactus, a, um, untouched, intact, § 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter (with Acc.), between, § 8, § 31; during, § 18; among, § 7, § 19, § 32; inter sē, one with the other, mutually, § 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
interdum, sometimes, § 1
interēa, meanwhile, § 9
inter-ficē, 3, -fēcl, -fēctus, a, um,
I kill (lit. make away with), § 43
interim, meanwhile
interior (interiōr-), 3, interior,
inner, § 11
interrogō, 1, I ask, enquire, § 19
intrā (with Acc.), within, § 23;
(of time), § 29
intxd, 1, I enter, § 2
invictus, a, um, unconquered, invincible
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, -self, § 6; In
ipsē temporē, at the very
time, in the nick of time, § 39
ira, 1, anger, wrath, § 15, § 27
Is, ea, id, that, § 2; Is . . . qui,
he . . . who, oī . . . qui,
those . . . who, § 51
Isca, 1, Caerleon, on the Usk, not
far from Cardiff, § 5
ita, thus, so, § 21; in such a way,
§ 53
Italia, 1, Italy, § 6
itaque, accordingly, therefore, § 3
iter (itiner-), 3, n., march, § 39;
iter facēd, I march, § 44
iterum, a second time, § 23
lubeō, 2, lussî, lussus, a, um, I bid,
command, § 25
Iūdaeus, 2, Jew, § 32
iūdicō, 1, I judge, § 49
Iūnius, 1, um, of June, § 56
iustus, a, um, just, § 10; proper,
regular, § 13 (iustum proelium, a pitched battle)
Iuvat (3rd pers. sing., present
tense, 1st Conj.), it delights,
§ 17

K

Kalendae, 1, plur., Calends, the first day of each month, § 1

L

labor (labōr-), 3, labour, toil, § 35
labōrd, 1, I labour, am in difficulties, § 39
lāe (lact-), 3, n., milk, § 50
lacus, 4, lake, pond; Lacus
Grāmineus, Graspan (Grass
Pond), on the frontier of the
Orange River Colony, § 44
laetitia, 1, delight, happiness, § 56
laevus, a, um, left; laeva, left
hand, § 17
later, 3, brick, § 22
Latinē, adv., in Latin
Latinus, a, um, Latin, § 15
lātus, a, um, wide, broad, § 15
laudō, 1, I praise, § 16
laus (laus-), 3, praise, § 44
lectītō, 1, I read, § 1
lectus, 2, bed, § 29
lēgātus, 2, lieutenant - general,
general [legate], § 38
legiō (-iōn-), 3, legion (about
5,000 men), § 9; brigade
(consisting of four battalions,
about 3,200 men), § 47
legō, 3, lēgi, lectus, a, um, I read,
§ 34
lentē, slowly, § 49
levīs, e, 3, light: equitēs Africānī
levīs armātūræ, Imperial
Light Horse (consisting of the
Outlanders of the Transvaal),
§ 38
libenter, gladly, willingly, § 17
liber, libr-um, -i, -ō, 2, book, § 1
liber, libera, liberum, free (some-
times with Abl. - from), § 4;
independent, § 49
liberē, 2, pl., children (properly an adjective meaning "free ones," i.e. children of free-born parents), § 7
liberō, 1, I liberate, set free; urbem obsidīōne liberō, I raise the siege of a town, § 44
libertās (-tā-), 3, liberty, freedom, § 4
līcet (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj.; Perf. licuit), it is allowed (Dat., to), it is lawful (Dat., for), § 56. [Hence licentia, licence.]
lingua, 1, tongue, language, § 15
littera, 1, letter (of the alphabet), § 3; litterae (pl.), literature, letters, § 15; a letter—an epistle, § 31
litterārius, a, um, connected with letters (litterae), literary, § 15
litus (liter-), 3, coast, § 2
locus, 2, place (pl. loca, n.), or passage of a book (pl. locī, m.), § 1; locō, in place, instead (with Gen.)
Londinium, 2, London, § 9
longē, far, § 8
longinquus, a, um, distant, § 56
longus, a, um, long, § 2; longum, a long story, § 31
lūdus, 2, game, § 1; lūdus litterārius, school, § 15
Luguallum, 2, Carlisle, § 11
lūna, 1, moon, § 29
lupus, 2, wolf, § 12
lux (lūc-), 3, light, § 55

Macrifontium, 2, Magersfontein (-'Lean or Meagre Fountain'), on the frontier of the Orange River Colony, § 45
ma·gister, 2, schoolmaster, teacher, § 1
magnītūdō (-tūdin-), 3, magnitude, greatness, § 49
magnopere (-magnō opere), greatly, § 10
magnus, a, um, great, large, § 2
māior (m., f.), māius (n.), (māiōr-) 3, greater [major, major-ity], § 15; Māior Britannia, Greater Britain, § 49
māiōrēs (plur.), ancestors, § 20
Mājūba, 1, Majuba, a hill on the northern frontier of Natal, § 35
Mājūbensis, e, 3, of Majuba, § 52
Māncuniensis, e, 3, of Manchester (Mancunium); Māncuniënses the Manchesters, § 50
mandō, 1, I commit, entrust, § 5
māne (indeclinable), properly in the morning, § 1; on the morning, § 46; à māne, from morning, § 30
manēō, 2, mansī, I remain, § 26
manūmissīō (-lion-), 3, manumission, liberation
manus, 4, f., hand, § 23; power, possession, § 28; band, § 25
manūscriptus, a, um, manuscript (written by the hand)
Marcus, 2, Mark, § 1
mare, 3, sea, § 1
Mariānus, a, um, Marian; Castra Mariāna, Ladysmith, the headquarters of the British forces in Natal; so called after the wife of Sir Harry Smith. Her Christian names were Juana Maria
maritimus, a, um, of the sea, maritime, § 11
Martīulis, 3, Martial, a Roman poet of the first century a.D., § 17, § 33
ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

minister, ministr-um, -I, -ô, 2; servant, minister, § 25; Minister of State, § 31
ministrô, 1, I attend [minister], § 47 (tormentis ministrô, I serve the guns)
minor (m., f.), minus (n.), Comparative of parvus, smaller, less, § 17
minus, adv., less, § 8; not very, § 45
mîrus, a, um, wonderful, strange, § 6
miser, misera, miserum, unhappy, miserable, wretched, § 14
misericordia, 1, pity, § 28
missile, 3, missile, § 13
mittô, 3, mîsî, missus, a, um, I send (sometimes—I let go), § 32
mőbilitâs (-tät-), 3, mobility, § 17
modus, 2, manner, way, § 13
Môna, 1, Isle of Anglesea, § 7
mons (mont-), 3, m., mountain, § 5
monstrô, 1, I show, point out, § 2
monumentum, 2, monument, § 10
mora, 1, delay, § 18
mors (mort-), 3, death, § 3
mortifer, a, um, death-bringing, deadly, § 46 (compare frûgi-fer, aquilifer, etc.)
mortuus, a, um, dead, § 7
môs (môr-), 3, custom, § 6; mörë suô, according to his custom, § 53
moveô, 2, môvi, môtus, a, um, I move [motion]; hostem locô moveô, I move the enemy from his position, I dislodge the enemy, § 54
mox, in due course (soon), § 29
multitûdô (-tûdin-), 3, multitude, § 6
multus, a, um, much: multi, ae, a, many, § 2; multa, many things, § 1; multum (adv.), much, very much, § 1; very.
nam, for, § 1
narrō, 1, I tell, narrate, § 6
nātālis, e, connected with birth:
Terra Nātālis, the land of the
Nativity, Natal, so called
because discovered on Christ-
mas Day, § 36; fēriae
Nātālēs, Christmas holidays,
§ 43
nātō (-ōn-), 3, tribe, nation, § 16,
§ 21
nātus, a, um, born, § 3; produced,
§ 31 (cp. native oysters)
ante Christum nātum—B.C.
post Christum nātum—A.D.
sexāginta annōs nātus, sixty
years old, § 48
nauta, i, sailor
nāvālis, e, 3, naval, belonging to
the navy, § 39
nāvigium, 2, vessel, ship, § 9
nāvigō, 1, I sail [navigate], § 23
nāvis (Gen. Plur. nāvium), 3,
ship, § 11; nāvis longa, ship
of war, § 36; nāvis āeria,
balloon, § 50
-ne marks a question, § 16, § 21
nē, not (in expressions of desire),
§ 49; lest or that . . . not,
§ 52
nē . . . quidem, not even . . . , § 12
nebula, 1, cloud, § 50
nec, nor, and not, § 2
nec . . . nec, neither . . . nor,
§ 12
necesse (indeclinable), necessary,
§ 1 (Dat.—for, § 16)

mūniō, 4, I fortify, § 40
mūrus, 2, wall, § 7
mütātō (-ōn-), 3, change, § 30
mūtātus, a, um, changed, § 17
mūtō, 1, I change, § 49

N

ne-seiō, 4, I do not know, § 41
nexus, 4, bond [con-nexion], § 56
nīdus, 2, nest, § 44
nīhil, nothing, § 2; nihil litterārum,
no letter, § 43
nīmis, too, § 18
nisi, unless, if . . . not, § 37;
except
nōbis, to us, § 6
nōbiscum, with us, § 18
nōctū, by night, in the night-time,
§ 51
nōmen (-min-), 3, name [nominal],
§ 3; reputation, § 48; race
(nōmen Britannicum), § 48
nōminō, 1, I name, call, § 3
nōn, not, § 2
nōndum, not yet, § 5
nōn iam, no longer, not any
longer
nōnne (-nōn + ne), not ? § 16
nōnnullī, a, some [nōn, not,
nullī, none], § 1
nōnnumquam, sometimes (lit.
not never), § 50
Nōnae, 1, plur., Nones (from
nōnus, a, um; lit. the ninth
day before the Ides, accord-
ing to the Roman method of
reckoning; the fifth or
seventh day of the month),
§ 39
nōnāgēsimus, a, um, ninetieth,
§ 25
nōnus, a, um, ninth, § 10
nōs, we or us, ourselves, § 1
noster, nostrī, nostrum, our, § 1;
nostri, m. plur., our men, § 38
nōlitia, i, knowledge, § 25
nullus, a, um (Gen. Sing. nullius, Dat. nullī), not any, no, § 8
num, whether, marking a question, § 8
numerus, 2, number, § 2
nummus, 2, coin, § 1
numquam, never, § 8
nunc, now, § 12
nuntiō, 1, I announce, § 8; report, § 36
nuntius, 2, messenger (nuntius verbi divini, missionary, § 25); message, § 41
nūper, recently, lately, § 24
nusquam, adv., nowhere, § 46

sun, moon and stars; from ob- and cadō, I fall), § 49
occultō, 1, I hide, § 5
occupō, 1, I seize [occupy], § 5
octāvus, a, um, eighth [octave] § 38
octingentāsimus, a, um, eight hundredth, § 56
octingenti, ae, a, eight hundred
octō (indeclinable), eight, § 44
October, bris, bre, 3, of October, § 31
octōgēsimus, a, um, eightieth, § 56
octōgintā, eighty, § 9
oculus, 2, eye, § 6; in oculis, in sight, § 22
odium, 2, hatred, § 56
officium, 2, duty, § 56
ōlim, adv., long ago, in the olden time, § 56
ōmen (ōmin-), 3, omen, sign [omin-ous], § 8
omnia, Neut. Plur. of omnis. all things, everything
omninō altogether, § 27
omnis, 3, adj., every; Plur. omnēs, m. and f., omnia, n., all, § 3
opera, 1, attention, study, § 1; operam dō ut, I take pains that, I try to, § 50

oblivīō (-lōn-), 3, oblivion, forgetfulness, § 2; obliviviōni dō, I consign to oblivion, I forget, § 15
ob-rūō, 3, -rul, I bury, § 56
obscūrō, 1, I obscure, darken, § 50
obscūrus, a, um, obscure, dark, § 1, § 23
ob-sessus, a, um, besieged, § 43
ob-sidēō, 2, -sēdi, -sessus, a, um, I besiege, lit. sit down against, § 23
ob-sidēō (-lōn-), 3, siege, § 50; urbem obsidione libōrō, I raise the siege of a town, lit. I free a town from siege, § 44
ob-stō, -stāre, -stiti (with Dat.), I stand against, resist
ob-tineō, 2, -tīnū, -tentus, a, um, I retain, maintain, keep hold of, § 35. [The English word 'obtain' comes from obtineō, but does not mean the same; to 'obtain' generally — 'to get']
occidens (occident-), 3, the West, § 12
occidentālis, e, 3, western, § 10
oc-ēdō, 3, -ēdi, I set (used of the
pācātus, a, um, subdued, pacified, § 12
pācificus, a, um, peaceful, peace-giving [pacific], § 56
pācō, I, I pacify, subdue, § 10
paene, adv., almost, § 47
paeninsula, 1, peninsula (paene, almost; insula, island), § 24
parātus, a, um, prepared, ready, § 29
pars (parent-), 3, parent, § 21
parō, I, I prepare, § 5; prepare for, § 41
parvus, a, um, small, little, § 25
pax (pāc-), 3, peace, § 12
peccō, I, I sin, § 27
pedes (pedit-), 3, foot-soldier, § 45
pedester, tris, tre, 3, infantry (used as an adj.), pedestrian, § 2
pellō, 3, pepuli, pulsus, a, um, I drive, ex-pei, § 35
penētēs (Gen. penētium), 3, plur., household gods—home, § 8
penetrō, I, I penetrate, § 2
per (with Acc.), through, § 11; during, § 1; along, § 44
per-currō, 3, -ecurrē or -currī, I overrun, § 36
per-dō, 3, -didi, -ditus, a, um, I destroy [per-duction]; aquam
perdō, I waste time (lit. water), § 32
peregrinus, a, um, foreign, § 26
peregrinus, 2, foreigner, § 32
periculōsus, a, um, perilous, dangerous, § 48
periculum, 2, peril, danger, § 12

orbis, 3, m., circle [orb]; orbis
terrārum—the world, § 4
ordō (din-), 3, m., rank [ordinary], § 8
Ordovicēs, 2, a tribe of North Wales, § 5
orients (orient-), 3, the East [oriental], § 12
origō (origin-), 3, origin, § 19; origine, by origin, § 34
oriundus, a, um, sprung, § 6
ornātus, 4, adornment, attire, § 50
ornātus, a, um, ornamented, dressed, § 50
ornō, I, I equip, ad-orn, § 7
ostrea, 1, oyster, § 31
ovis (Gen. Plur. ovium), 3, sheep, § 50
ōvum, 2, egg, § 51

pācātus, a, um, subdued, pacified, § 12
pacificus, a, um, peaceful, peace-giving [pacific], § 56
pācō, I, I pacify, subdue, § 10
paene, adv., almost, § 47
paeninsula, 1, peninsula (paene, almost; insula, island), § 24
parātus, a, um, prepared, ready, § 29
pars (parent-), 3, parent, § 21
parō, I, I prepare, § 5; prepare for, § 41
parvus, a, um, small, little, § 25
pax (pāc-), 3, peace, § 12
peccō, I, I sin, § 27
pedes (pedit-), 3, foot-soldier, § 45
pedester, tris, tre, 3, infantry (used as an adj.), pedestrian, § 2
pellō, 3, pepuli, pulsus, a, um, I drive, ex-pei, § 35
penētēs (Gen. penētium), 3, plur., household gods—home, § 8
penetrō, I, I penetrate, § 2
per (with Acc.), through, § 11; during, § 1; along, § 44
per-currō, 3, -ecurrē or -currī, I overrun, § 36
per-dō, 3, -didi, -ditus, a, um, I
destroy [per-duction]; aquam
perdō, I waste time (lit. water), § 32
peregrinus, a, um, foreign, § 26
peregrinus, 2, foreigner, § 32
periculōsus, a, um, perilous, dangerous, § 48
periculum, 2, peril, danger, § 12
peritus, a, um, skilled (Gen.—in), § 11
per-noctō, I spend the night, § 16
perpetuus, a, um, perpetual, everlasting, § 12
per-tineō, 2, -tinul, I stretch, extend, § 23; pertinet ad, it concerns, pertains to, § 32 (compare the word 'impertinent,' which properly means 'not pertaining to,' hence 'unbecoming')
perturbō, I, I throw into disorder, § 46
per-veniō, 4, -vēniō, I arrive (lit. come through), § 42
pēs (ped.-), 3, m., foot, § 22; pedibus, on foot, § 45
Petreius collis, Pieters Hill, North of the Tugela and to the South-East of Ladysmith, § 55
pharus, 2, f., light-house, § 23
Picti, 2, plur., Picts, § 19
pictus, a, um, painted; tabula picta, picture, § 1
pigēt (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj.; Perf. piguit), it vexes me, mē piget, it vexes me, I am sorry, § 23; mē nōn piget, I don't mind, § 22
pila, 1, ball [pill], § 17; cricket ball, § 30
pius, a, um, loving [pious], § 56
plēnus, a, um, full, § 29; with Gen. § 56, with Abl. filled, § 50
plērumque, mostly, generally, § 1
plārumus, a, um, very much, § 38 (Superlative of multus)
plūs (plūr-), more [hence 'plural'], § 32
poēta, 1, poet, § 4
Pompōnía Graecina, wife of Aulus Plantius, § 27
pondus (ponder-), 3, weight, § 9
pōnō, 3, posui, positus, a, um, I place [position], § 40
pons (pont-), 3, m., bridge; Fons Aelius, Newcastle, § 20
pontifex (pontiflæ-), 3, pontifl, pope, § 25
populus, 2, a people, § 6
porcus, 2, pig [pork], § 50
porta, 1, gate (of a city)
portentum, 2, portent, marvel, § 8
portō, 1, I carry, § 18
portus, 4, port, harbour, § 23; Portus Nātālis, Durban, § 42
possum (—pot-sum), posse (—potesse), potui, I am able, § 3
post (with Acc.), after, § 1; since, § 48
postēa, adv., afterwards; § 20
posterus, a, um, next, § 55; posterior (m., f.), posterior (n.), later, § 16
postquam, after—after the time when, § 2; since, § 25
postrēmō, adv., at last, finally, § 53
posstridē, on the next day, § 13
praebēō, 2, præ-bul, præ-bitus, a, um, I provide, afford, § 23 (—præ-hibeō, etc., from habēō, lit. I hold forth)
praecipītō, 1, I hurl down [precipitate], § 8; præcipitans, knocking down, § 39
praecipūe, adv., chiefly, especially, § 34
praecipuus, a, um, chief, special, particular, § 24
praeclārus, a, um, very famous, splendid, § 12
praeda, 1, prey, booty, § 9
praefectus, 2, officer [prefect]; president, § 31; governor of a colony, § 36
praemittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, a, um, I send forward, § 45
praenōmen (—nōmīn-), 3, forename, Christian name
praemītō, -stāre, -stīti, I exhibit, show, § 6; render, § 49
praesum, -esse, -fuī (with Dat.), I am in command of, am at the head of, § 3
Praetōria, 1, Pretoria, the capital of the Transvaal, § 56

M
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prandium, 2, lunch, § 1</td>
<td>prömunturium, 2, promontory, § 22; cape, § 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pretium, 2, price, § 50 (grandi pretiō, at a high price)</td>
<td>prope (with Acc.), near, § 9; nearly, § 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pridē, adv., on the day before, § 16; with Acc., § 42</td>
<td>properō, 1, I hasten, § 9; I act rapidly, § 53 (different in meaning from festinō, I hurry —act without sufficient thought)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primō, at first, § 13</td>
<td>propior, propius, nearer, § 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primus, a, um, first, § 1</td>
<td>prōpositum, 2, proposal, § 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princeps (princip-,), 3, emperor, § 2; prince, chieftain, § 15</td>
<td>propter (with Acc.), on account of, § 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princeps, 3, headship, sovereignty, § 35; principate, reign (of a 'princeps'), § 27</td>
<td>prōpulsō, 1, I drive off, keep off, repel, § 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principā, 2, plur., headquarters</td>
<td>prosperē, successfully, prosperously, § 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prior (prōr-), 3, previous [prior], § 5</td>
<td>prosperus, a, um, successful, prosperous, § 31; rēs prosperae, success, prosperity, § 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō (with Abl.), instead of, for, § 7; for the sake of, § 4</td>
<td>prō-sum, -esse, -suī (with Dat.), I am helpful, do good, § 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procella, 1, storm; Mons Procellārum, Störnberg, in the north of Cape Colony, § 46</td>
<td>prōverbum, 2, proverb, familiar saying, § 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōmunturium Procellārum, Cape of Storms, the old name of the Cape of Good Hope, § 48</td>
<td>prōvincla, 1, province, § 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procul, far, § 22; afar, § 26</td>
<td>proximus, a, um, nearest, next, § 11; last, preceding, § 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-eurrō, 3, -eurrē or -euri, I run forward, I charge, § 38</td>
<td>prūina, 1, frost, § 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proelium, 2, battle, § 5</td>
<td>puer, 2, boy, § 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-festus, a, um, not holy, not festal; diēs festus, a working-day, § 30</td>
<td>pugna, 1, fight, battle, § 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-fundō, 3, -fūdī, -fūsus, a, um, I pour out, shed [profuse], § 54</td>
<td>pugnāns (pugnānt-), 3, adj., fighting, § 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-hibēō, 2, -hibul, -hibitus, a, um (from habēō; lit. I hold at a distance), I prohibit, forbid, with Infīn., § 26; I prevent, with Infīn., § 36; with Abl. (—from), § 52; with nē, lest, that, § 52</td>
<td>pugnō, 1, I fight, § 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōmissum, 2, promise, § 26</td>
<td>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, fine, beautiful, glorious, § 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-mittō, -mīsit, -missus, a, um, I promise, § 37</td>
<td>pulchrē, beautifully, gloriously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōmissum, 2, promise, § 26</td>
<td>pulvis (pulver-), 3, m., dust, cloud of dust, § 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadrāgēsimus, a, um, fortieth, § 3</td>
<td>punctum, 2, point [punct-ual]; punctum temporis, a moment, § 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quadrāgintā (indeclinable), forty, § 22</td>
<td>puteus, 2, well, § 23; pit, § 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putō, 1, I fancy, think, suppose, § 56</td>
<td>Q</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
quadratus, a, um, square, four-cornered, § 23; agmine quadrat©, in quarter column, § 46
quadringentésimus, a, um, four hundredth, § 24
quadringenti, ae, a, four hundred, § 22
quaeœ, 3, I pray, or please (tell me), § 32
quaeœi (−iōn−), 3, question, enquiry, § 19
quam, how, § 30; as; than, § 14
quamquam, although, § 2
quand©, when, § 18
quantopere, how much, § 18
quantus, a, um, how great, § 56; tantus ... quantus, so great ... as, § 48
quartus, a, um, fourth, § 3
quartus decimus, fourteenth, § 3
quattuor, four, § 2
quattuordecim, fourteen
qui, quae, quod, which? or what?, § 19
qui, quae, quod, who, which, § 20
quia, because, § 1

qui-dam, quae-dam, quod-dam, a certain, § 35
quingentésimus, a, um, five hundredth, § 25
quingenti, ae, a, five hundred, § 44
quinquagésimus, a, um, fiftieth
quinquagint© (indicl.), fifty, § 20
quinque, five, § 30
quintus, a, um, fifth, § 7
quintus decimus, fifteenth, § 3
quis (m., f.), quid (n.), who?, what?, §§ 14, 15, 19; anyone, anything; num quid, whether anything?, § 31; nœ quid, lest anything, § 52
quis-que, quae-que, quid-que or quod-que, each, each one, § 56
quœ, whither, to which, § 42
quod, that, § 23
quondam, once on a time, formerly, § 22
quoque, too, also, § 3
quam quoque, then too, even then
quota hœra est? what o'clock is it?, § 18
quotœ hœra, at what o'clock?, § 18

R
regina, 1, queen, § 3
regio (−iōn−), 3, region, district, § 11
regius, a, um, royal, § 31
regn©, 1, I reign, § 3
regnum, 2, kingdom [reign], § 3
reliquiae, i, pl., relics, remains, § 5
reliquus, a, um, the rest, the remaining
remoder, a, um, remote, § 4
re-moveœ, 2, -mœvi, -mœtus, a, um, I remove [remote], § 27
re-portætus, a, um, carried off, won, § 5
re-port©, 1, I carry off (or back), win, § 2
rœs, 5, thing, affair, § 30; rœs publica (rœspœlica), common-
wealth, republic, § 31; ré
véra (rēvéra), in reality, really, § 32; réspública, § 49
re-scribō, 3, -scripsi, -scriptus, a, um, I write back, § 43
re-servō, 1, I reserve, § 34
re-spondeō, 2, -spondi, -sponsus, a, um, I answer, respond [response], § 22
re-stituō, 3, -stitul, -stítūsus, a, um, I restore [restitution], § 49
re-surgō, 3, surrexī, I rise again [resurrection], § 56
re-tardō, 1, I retard, delay, impede (from tardus, a, um, slow, tardy), § 6
révera, really, § 2 (or, as two words, ré vera, § 32)
re-vincīō, 4, -vincī, -vinctus, a, um, I bind fast, § 56

sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred, § 27
saeculum, 2, century, § 16
saepē, often, § 1
saevus, a, um, savage, cruel, § 12
saltus, 4, mountain-pass, § 46; Saltus Cervinus, Elands-laagte (—Stag’s lair), in the North of Natal, § 38
salūs (salūt-), 3, health, welfare; salūtem dieō, I send greeting, § 37; deliverance, § 53; annō salūtis in the year of grace, § 56
salūtō, 1, I salute, greet, § 56
saluēō, 2, I am safe and sound, I am in good health; saluē (plur. saluētē), hail!, § 22
salvus, a, um, safe and sound; salvum praestō, I render safe and sound, I save, § 49, § 50; salvus sis, may you be safe and sound! —God bless you!, § 51

sanctus, a, um, holy, § 27; Sanctus, 2, Saint, § 23
sanguis (sanguin-), 3, m., blood [sanguin-ary, con-sanguin-ity] § 34
satiō, 1, I satisfy, § 12
satis, enough, § 2; sufficiently, pretty well, § 17
Saxō (Saxon-), 3, Saxon, § 24
schola, 1, school, § 40; pl. lessons, § 1
scientia, 1, science, knowledge, § 9
scio, 4, scivi, I know, § 41; vincere scio, I know how to conquer, § 51
Scōtus, 2, Scot, § 19
scribō, 3, scripsi, scriptus, a, um, I write [script — a thing written; scribe — a writer, lawyer], § 32
scriptor (scriptōr-), 3, writer, § 3
sē, himself, herself, itself, § 9; themselves, § 11; inter sē, among themselves
secundus, a, um, second, § 2
sed, but, § 2
sedēō, 2, sédi, I sit, § 22
Segedūnum, 2, Wall’s End (—End of the Roman Wall), § 20
sēmi-hōra, 1, half an hour (sēmi—half, as in ‘semicircle,’ ‘semicolon,’ etc.), § 49
sēmi-somnus, a, um, half-asleep (sēmi-, half; somnus, sleep), § 49
semper, adv., always, § 24
senex (sen-em, -ls, -i, -e, etc.), old man, § 17
sententia, 1, sentence
sēparō, 1, I separate, § 4
septem (indecl.), seven, § 5
September, bris, bre, 3, of September, § 1
septentriōnālis, o, 3, northern, § 10
septentriōnēs, 3, plur., m., the North (properly, the seven stars of Charles’ Wain), § 39
septimus, a, um, seventh, § 6
septimus decimus, seventeenth, § 51
septingenti, ae, a, seven hundred, § 46
sēptuāgintā, seventy, § 9
septulcrum, 2, tomb, sepulchre, § 56
serēnus, a, um, clear [serene], § 18
sermō (sermōn-), 3, speech, conversation, talk [sermon], § 26
serō, late, too late, § 41
servitūs (servitūt-), 3, slavery, servitude, § 2
servō, 1, I preserve, keep, watch, § 9
servus, 2, slave, § 7
sescenti (for sex-centi), ae, a, six hundred, § 55
sexāgēsimus, a, um, sixtieth, § 7
sexāgintā (indecl.), sixty, § 22
sextus, a, um, sixth, § 11
si, if, § 6
sic, so, thus, § 9; as follows, § 22
sicut, as (lit. so as, just as), § 33
significātiō (−lōn-), 3, signification, meaning
significō, 1, I signify, mean, § 24; I express, § 53
signum, 2, sign, § 13; flag, standard, § 11; badge, § 34
silentium, 2, silence, § 13
silēō, 2, silui, I am silent; passive, silētur, it is silenced, § 30
Silurēs, 3, Silures, a tribe of South Wales, § 5
silva, 1, wood, forest, § 5
simulācrum, 2, image, § 7, § 27
sine (with Abl.), without, § 18
singuāris, o, 3, singular, strange, unique, § 37
sinister, tra, trum, left [sinister], § 44
situs, a, um, situated, § 22
sociētas (−tēt-), 3, alliance, society, union, § 34; Sociētas Africānā, Africander Bond, § 35
socius, 2, ally, § 56
sōl, 3, the sun, § 49
sōlitūdō (−tūdō−), 3, solitude, desert, § 12
sōlitus, a, um, usual, § 51 (sōlitō densior, denser than usual)
solum, 2, soil, § 23
sōlum, only; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also, § 16
sōlus, a, um, (Gen. Sing. sōlius, Dat. Sing. sōli), alone, § 56
somnium, 2, dream, § 35
somnus, 2, sleep, § 43
spectāculum, 2, spectacle, show, § 6; sight, § 29
spectō, 1, I look, watch, gaze at, see, § 6
spērō, 1, I hope, § 12
spēs, 5, hope, § 41; promise, § 47
spiritus, 4, pride, airs [spirit], § 35
stābilītās (−tāt-), 3, stability, steadfastness, § 45
statim, adv., immediately, at once, § 18
statio (-iōn-), 3, station, sentry-duty, § 51; Statio Bechuānārum, Mafeking, in Bechuana-land, § 43
stō, stāre, steti, I stand, § 8
studeō, 2, studui, I am eager (Dat. -for), § 35
studium, 2, eagerness, study, pursuit, § 15; plur. studia, studies, § 1
stultitia, 1, folly, § 37
sub (with Abl.), under, § 11; down in; (with Acc.), down into, down to, down along, § 23; towards, § 38
subjectus, a, um, subject, § 3
subito, suddenly, § 39
subministrō, 1, I supply, § 4
subterrāneus, a, um, subterranean, underground, § 23
Suēbl, 2, plur., Swabians, § 24
Suētōnius Paulinus, 2, a Roman general of the time of Nero, § 7

Suētōnius Tranquillus, 2, a Roman writer of the second century A.D., § 3
sum, esse, fui, I am, § 1
summus, a, um, highest, chief, § 10; greatest, very great, § 37
sūmpsi, sumpsit, sumptus, a, um, I assume, take, § 35; I undertake, § 56
super (with Acc.), over, above, § 46
superior (superiōr-), 3, comp. adj., previous, past; superior, victorious
superō, 1, I overcome, § 5; I surpass, am superior, § 9; I surround, § 44
superstītiō (-iōn-), 3, superstition, § 27
sus-tineō, 2, -tineō, -tensus, a, um, I sustain, endure, (from sub- and teneō), § 54
suus, a, um, his (or his own), her (or her own), its (or its own), their (or their own), § 2; sui, his (or their) men, § 9, § 13

tē, thee, you; tēcum, with thee, with you
templum, 2, temple, § 7
tempus (tempor-), 3, time [temporary], § 2; ad tempus, at the right time, in time, § 22; in ipsō tempore, in the nick of time, § 39
tenebræ, 1, plur., darkness, § 39; Rex Tenebrarum, the Devil, § 28
teneō, 2, teneō, tensus, a, um, I hold, § 23
ter, adv., three times, thrice, § 54
terra, 1, land, § 4
terribilis, a, 3, terrible, § 38
terror (terrōr-), 3, terror, panic, § 39

tabula, 1, tablet, plate; tabula picta, picture, § 1
Tacitus, 2, a Roman historian, § 1
Taiāna, 1, a hill near Dundee, in Natal, § 38
tam, so, § 43
tamen, nevertheless, however, § 1
Tamesa, 1, m., Thames, § 2; Caesar calls the river 'Tame-sis' (3rd Decl.), but Tacitus calls it 'Tamesa' (1st Decl.)
Tanatis (Acc. Tanatim; Abl. Tanati), 3, Thanet, § 24
tandem, at length, § 5
tantum, so much, or only, § 8, § 24
tantus, a, um, so great, § 4
Tasciovānus, 2, a British king, § 3
Tasmania, 1, Tasmania, § 49
| tertius, a, um, third, § 2 | trigintā (indecl.), thirty, § 22 |
| tertius decimus, thirteenth, § 2 | trigōn, 3, m. (a Greek word), ball, tennis ball, § 30 |
| tessellātus, a, um, tesselated, made of mosaic work, § 15 (from tessella, a small cube) | trigōnālis, e, of (or connected with) the tennis ball, § 1 |
| testimōnium, 2, testimony, evidence, § 10 | Trinobantēs, 3, plur., a tribe in Essex, § 7 |
| Tiberius, 2, Tiberius, the second Roman emperor, § 2 | triplex (triplic-), 3, adj., triple, § 36 |
| Togodumnus, 2, a son of Cuno-belinus, § 3 | Trisantōna, 1, m., the Trent; see map of Britannia Romana. The form ‘Trisantōna’ is uncertain, depending on the reading of a passage in Tac. Ann., xii. 31 |
| tolerō, 1, I tolerate, endure, bear, § 2 | tristis, e, 3, sad, § 30; bitter, § 56 |
| tonitrus, 4, m., thunder, § 46 | triumphālis, e, 3, triumphal, § 55 |
| tormentum, 2, hurling machine, gun, § 38 | triumphō, 1, I triumph, exult, § 9 |
| tot (indeclin. adj.), so many, § 49 | trucidātō (-īōn-), 3, slaughter, § 13 |
| tōtus, a, um (Gen. Sing. tōtius, Dat. Sing. tōtī), whole, § 4 | trucidō, 1, I slaughter, murder, § 7 |
| trā-dō, 3, -dīdī, -dītus, a, um, I hand down, lit. give across [tradition], § 56 | tū, thou, you (Sing.), § 17 |
| trahō, 3, traxi, tractus, a, um, I drag, draw, § 39 [traction engine] | Tugēla, 1, m., the Tugela, a river in Natal, § 47 |
| trācīdō (=trā-īcidō), 3, -īcēdī, -īcētus, a, um, I throw across, § 44; I cross, § 54 | tum, then (—at that time or there-on), § 6 |
| trans (with Acc.), across, § 11 | tumultus, 4, tumult, § 38 |
| transportō, 1, I transport, § 2 | tumultus, 2, rising ground, kopje, § 44 |
| trecenti, ae, a, three hundred, § 46 | turbulentus, a, um, turbulent, unsettled, § 10; Flūmen Turbulentum, the Modder River (in the Orange River Colony: 'Modder'—mud), § 44 |
| tredecim (indecl.), thirteen, § 25 | turpis, e, 3, disgraceful, § 56 |
| tremō, 3, tremulo, I tremble, § 38 | turris (Gen. Plur. turrium), 3, tower, turrel, § 22 |
| trēs (m., f.), tria (n.), Gen. trium; Dat., Abl. tribus; three, § 13, § 30 | tūtus, a, um, safe, § 12 |
| tribūtum, 2, tribute, § 2 | tuus, a, um, thy, your |

**U**

| ubi, where, § 1 | umquam, adv., ever, at any time, § 14 |
| ullus, a, um, any (Gen. Sing. ullius, Dat. Sing. ulli) | ūnā, together; ūnā cum, together with, § 6 |
| ultimus, a, um, last [ultimate], § 1: litterae ultimae, a final despatch—an ultimatum, § 37 | unda, 1, wave, § 36 |
| ultimum, 2, dining-room | unde, whence, § 26 |
undeclm (indecl.), eleven, § 13
undecimus, a, um, eleventh
undētrēoślīmus, a, um, twenty-ninth, § 33
undēvīgintī (indecl.), nineteen, § 52
undique, adv., on all sides, § 39
ūniversus, a, um, all together [universal]
ūnus, a, um (Gen. Sing. ūnius, Dat. Sing. ūni), one, § 5

urbs (urb-), 3, city [urban], § 5
usque ad, right on to, § 11
ūsus, 4, use, § 23 (ūsul)
ut, how, § 22, § 31; as, § 3; ut possum, as best I can, § 38, § 46; with the Subjunctive, that, in order that, § 50; so that, § 50
ūtilis, e, 3, useful, § 15
uxor (uxôr-), 3, wife, § 6

V

vaccâ, 1, cow, § 50
vadum, 2, shallow place, shoal, ford, 'drift,' § 41
Vahalis, 3, m., Vaal (a river in Holland and in South Africa), § 32
valebō, 2, valui, I fare well, am in good health, am strong; valēre iubeō, I bid farewell (lit. to fare well), § 23; valē (plur. valēte), farewell, § 30; ut valeō? how do you do?, § 31; multum valet, avails much, § 34
validus, a, um, strong, § 49
vallum, 2, rampart, earthen wall, § 20
vastō, 1, I lay waste [de-vast-ate], § 7
vastus, a, um, wild, waste [vast]
Vectis, 3, (Acc. Sing., Vectim; Abl. Sing., Vecti), Isle of Wight, § 15
vehiculum, 2, vehicle, cart, § 9, carriage, § 18
vel, or, § 1
velut, as, even as, as it were [vel even; ut, as], § 11
venerābilis, e, 3, venerable, § 27
venia, 1, pardon, mercy, § 6
veniō, 4, vēni, I come, § 40
Venta Belgārum, 1, Winchester, § 34
vēnum-dō, -dare, -dedi, I sell, § 2 [vēnum, for sale; dō, I offer]

verbum, 2, word, § 11, § 25; suīs verbis—in his name, § 52
vērē, adv., truly, § 6
Vergilius, 2 (Publius Vergilius Marō), a Roman poet of the age of Augustus, § 4
vērō, compar. adv., more truly, § 56
verō, but; but in truth, § 42
versus, 4, verse, § 38
vertō, 3, verti, versus, a, um, I turn; bene vertat, may it turn out well, § 56
Verulāmium, 2, St. Albans, in Hertfordshire, twenty miles from London
vērus, a, um, true, § 10; vēra, the truth (lit. true things), § 11; vērō, in truth, § 42
vesper, 2, evening, § 30 [vespers]
vester, vestra, vestrum, your (of several persons), § 12
vestibulum, 2, vestibule, entrance hall
vestimentum, 2, garment [vestment], § 50
veterānus, 2, veteran, old soldier, § 5
vexillum, 2, standard, flag, § 38
 vexō, 1, I annoy, vex, § 2
via, 1 road, way, § 1; dē via, from the road; in viam mē dō, I give myself to the road, I start, § 18; inter viam, on the journey, § 19
ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

vicēsimus, a, um, twentieth, § 39
victōriānus, a, um, Victorian; crux Victoriāna, the Victoria Cross, instituted by Queen Victoria for conspicuous bravery, § 56
victrix (victriō-), 3, adj., fem., victorious, § 5
video, 2, vidi, visus, a, um, I see, § 22; video nē, I see to it that . . . not, § 52, § 56
vīgintī (indeclinable), twenty, § 22
villa, 1, country-house, villa, § 15
vinco, 3, vel, victus, a, um, I conquer, defeat, § 35
vir, 2, man, § 2
Viroco-handler, 2, Viroconium (Wrox-eter), near Shrewsbury, § 5
virtūs (virtūt-), 3, pluck, courage [virtue], § 4

Vila, 3. Acc. vim, § 54; Abl. vi, § 50, violence, force: Plur. vīr-ēs, -ium, -ibus, strength
visitō, 1, I visit, § 1
vīta, 1, life, § 1; Vita Agricola, the Life of Agricola, a work by Tacitus
vītā, 1, I avoid, § 13
vīvō, 3, vixi, I live
vix, scarcely, hardly, § 43
vōbis, to you; vōbiscum, with you
vocans ( vocant- ), 3, calling, § 42
vocō, 1, I call, § 4; I summon, § 8
volō, 1, I fly, § 9
voluntārius, 2, volunteer [voluntary], § 49
vōs (Nom. and Acc.), you, § 6
vox (vōc- ), 3, voice, § 49
vulnerō, 1, I wound, § 13; vulnerātus, a, um, wounded, § 38
vulnus (vulner-), 3, wound [vulnerable], § 54

Z

Zelanda, 1, Zealand; 'Nova Zeelanda' was the name given by Tasman to New Zealand, § 49
II. ENGLISH-LATIN

Nearly all the words contained in the Exercises have occurred in previous passages of the text of Pro Patria and ought therefore to be familiar to the pupil. The object of this Vocabulary is simply to put him on the track of the word, if he has forgotten it: and, accordingly, the minimum of information is given here. In the case of a few words, however, introduced from Ora Maritima or not appearing in either book, the declension or conjugation is indicated.

able; I am—, possum; to be—, posse about (Prep.), ē; (Adv.) circiter accordingly, itaque accuse, accusāre across, trans admit, admittēre adorn, ornāre affirm, affirmāre afraid, I am, formidō after (Prep.), post; (—after the time when), postquam afterwards, postea against, contrā age, aetās air, āer all, omnēs already, iam also, etiam; but also, sed etiam although, quamquam always, semper among, in numerō (with gen.), or inter amphitheātrum ancient, antiquus angel, angelus angle, angulus Angles, Angli Annals, Annālēs annoy, vexāre another, alius, alia, aliud, or alter, a, um answer, respondēre any longer, iam arms, arma army, exercitus around, circum arrival, adventus arrive, adventāre, or advenire (after § 41) as, ut, or sicut ascend, ascendere at once, statim at the present day, hodie attack, impetus attack, to, oppugnāre attendant, minister attention, opera August, Augustus aunt, amīta avoid, vitāre await, exspectāre away, to be, abesse ball, pīla balloon, nāvis āeria barbarians, barbari barbarous, barbarus baths, balneae battalion, cohors battle, proelium beautiful, pulcher because, quia before, ante begin, incipere beginning, initiūm behoves, it, oportet Belgian, Belga Belgium, Belgium bell, tintinnābulum beloved, cărissimus besiege, obsidēre best, optimus betake oneself, sē recipere better, melior, melius between, inter bid, iūbeō big, magnūs bird, avis (fem.) black, niger blue, caeruleus body (—troop), manus Boer, Batāvus book, liber booty, praedā born, nātus boundaries, finēs boy, puēr brave, fortis bravo, eugē breakfast, iēnāculum bright, clārus bring up, aportāre Britain, Britannia British, Britannicus Britons, Britanni brothe, frāter build, to, aedificāre building, aedificium burn, to, cremāre but, sed by, ā (ab); = near, ad curs Caledonian (adj.), Calēdonius; Caledonians, the, Calēdonēs call, to, vocāre calm, tranquillus camp, castra can, I, possum cannon, torūmentum cape, prūmentum capital, caput captive, capītus
ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

capture, captūre
carry off, deportāre
cause, causā
cavalry, equester (adj.)
Celts, Celiae
century, saeculum
channel, flēsum
chapter, caput
charge, to, prōcurrēre
chariot, essedum
cheerful, hilarus
chief, summus
children, liberī
Christ, Christus
Christian, Christiānus
church, basilica
Cicero, Cicerō (-ōn-)
citizen, civis
citizenship, civitās
city, urbēs
civil war, bellum domēsticum
civilized, hūmānus
climb up, ascendere
cloak, chlamys (chlamydē-), 3
cloud of dust, pulvis
coast, littus
cohort, cohors
coin, nummus
Colchester, Camulodūnum
collect, colligō
colonel, praefectus
colony, colonia
come, venire
command, imperium
command, to be in, prae-esse (of, Dat.)
commander, imperātor
commander in chief, imperātor summus
commerce, mercātūra, 1
compel, cōgere
conquer, vincere
conquered, dēbellātus
conqueror, victor
conversation, sērmō
cost, to, constāre
cottage, casa
country (-native land) patria
country house, villa
courage, audācia
course, cursus
coward, ignāvus
cowardly, ignāvus
create, crēāre
cross, to, trācicere
cruel, crūdēlis
cube, tessella, 1
danger, periculum
dangerous, periculōsus
daughter, filia
day, diēs
dear, cārūs
death, mors
December, December
declare, déclārāre or affirmāre; declare
war, bellum indicere
defeat, superāre or vincere (after § 38)
defend, dēfendere
defender, dēfensor
delight, delectāmentum
delight, to, delectāre
desire, to, cupere
desirous, cupiēsus
destroy, dēlēre
devastate, vastāre
die, exspirāre
difficult, difficilis
dig, fōdere
dig up, excavāre
dining room, triclinium, 2
disaster, clādēs
distant, remōtus; to be—, distāre
distinguished, insignis
or clārus
ditch, dyke, fossa
dividé, dividēre
do, facere
dog, catulus
drive, pellere
drive off, prōpulsāre
during, inter or per
Dutch, Batāvus
dwell, habitāre
earth, terra
east, oriens
eastern, orientālis
easy, facilis
egg, ōvum
eight, octō
eight hundredth, octīngentāsimus
eighth, octāvus
eighty, octāvintā
eleventh, undecimus
e else, alius, alia, alīud
embroidered, pictus, a, um
emperor, princeps
empire, imperium
end, finis
endure, tolerāre
enemy, hostis
enrol, conscribere
enter, intrāre
entrust, mandāre
even, etiam
ever, umquam; —always, semper
every day, colīdiē
exclaim, exclāmāre
expectation, expectātiō
expedition, expeditiō
eye, oculus
face, faciēs
faithful, fidus
famous, celeber
far, procūl
farewell, valē
farm, aegilus
fashion, modus
fate, fortūna
father, pater
fatherland, patria
fear, to, formidāre
to, a few, pauci
fifth, quintus
fifty, quīnquāntā
fifty-fifth, quintus et
quinquāntāsimus
fight, to, pugnāre
fine, pulcher
fire, ignis, m.
first, primus
five, quīnque
flag, vexillum
fleet, classis
folly, stultitia
food, cibus
foot, péss, m.
football, follis, m.
for, nam or enim
for the sake, causā
forbid, prohibēre
forces, cōpiae
foreigner, peregrinus
forename, praeōmen
form, forma
fortieth, quadrāntāsimus
fortify, munire
forty, quadrāntā
forum, forum
found, condere
foundation, fundāmen-
tum
four, quattuor
fourteenth, quartus deci-
mus
fourth, quartus
fowl, gallīna
France, Francīgallia
free, liber
free, to, liberāre
freedom, libertās
French, the, Francī-
galli
friend, amicus
from, ā (ab) or ē (ex)
full, plēnus

Gallic, Gallicus
Gaul, Gallia
general, dux
German, Germānus
Germanic, Germānicus
Germany, Germānia
give, dare
glass vessels, vitrea, 2
glorious, clārus
glory, glorīa
god, deus
good, bonus
gradually, paulātim
great, magnus
greater, māior, māius
greatly, magnopere
grief, dolor
guard, custōdiere
gun, tormentum
hair, capillus, pl.
 hail, ārium
hand, manus
happy, felix (jēlic-), 3
harbour, portus
hasten, properāre
have, habēre
hear, audīre
help, auxilium, 2
high, altus
hill, collis, m.
himself (Accus.), sé
history, historia
hold, tenēre or habēre
(sermōnem)
holidays, fēriae
home, domus; —home-
wards, domum
hope, spēs
hope, to, spērāre
horse-flesh, carō equīna
hour, hōra
how, quam or ut
how many, quot
how much, quantopere
however, autem, tamen
hundred, centum; for
200 see ‘two.’
hurrah, optimē
hurry, festināre
if, si
image, simulācrum
immense, ingens
implore, implōvāre
in, in, with Abl.
in order that, ut
in the house of, apud
infantry, pedester (adj.)
inhabit, incolere
inhabitant, incola
inhuman, inhūmānus
injury, iniūria
into, in, with Acc.
Irish, Hibernicus
island, insula
Isle of Thanet, Insula
Tnantis
Isle of Wight, Insula
Vectis
January, Iānuārius
jolly, bellus
just, iustus
Jutland, paeninsula
Cimbrica
keen, acer
keeper, custōs
Kent, Cantium
kill, interficere (after
§ 43)
Kimberley, Adamantop-
olis
kind, benignus
king, rex
kingdom, regnum
kitchen, culina, 1
know, scire
knowledge, nōtītia
known, nōtus, a, um
Ladysmith, Castra Ma-
riāna
land, terra; lands, agri
land, to, applicāre
large, magnus
### ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laugh, ridère</td>
<td>miser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lazy, pigrer, pigr-er-a, -um</td>
<td>missile, missile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead, ducere</td>
<td>missionary, nuntius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left, laevus</td>
<td>verbi divini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legion, legio</td>
<td>mistaken, to be, errare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less, minus</td>
<td>mistress, domina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lessons, scholae</td>
<td>Modder River, Flumen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let out, emittere</td>
<td>Turbulentum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter, epistola or litterae; (of the alphabet), littera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberty, libertas</td>
<td>month, mensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie, iacere</td>
<td>moon, luna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life, vita</td>
<td>morning, in the, mane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light, lux</td>
<td>most bravely, fortissime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like to—, libenter, with Verb</td>
<td>mostly, plerumque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen, auscultare</td>
<td>mother, mater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little, parvus</td>
<td>mountain, mons, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live (—dwell), habitare</td>
<td>move, moveo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live on (—eat), victiare, with Abl.</td>
<td>much, multum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>London, Londiniun</td>
<td>multitude, multitudo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long (adj.), longus; (adv.), diu</td>
<td>murder, trucidare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look, spectare</td>
<td>naked, nudus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose, emittere</td>
<td>name, nomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love, amare</td>
<td>name, to, nominare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunch, prandium</td>
<td>Natal, Terra Natalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mafeking, Statio Bechuanaorum</td>
<td>near, prope or ad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make, facere</td>
<td>necessary, necessae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man, vir; —human being, homō</td>
<td>net, indagō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manufacture, fabricaere</td>
<td>never, numquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many, multi, ae, a</td>
<td>nevertheless, tamen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>march, iter facere</td>
<td>new, novus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meanwhile, interea</td>
<td>newspapers, actadiurna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mention, commemorare</td>
<td>next, proximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merciful, clēmens</td>
<td>night, nox; by night, noctū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merry, hilarus</td>
<td>nine hundred, nōngenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>message, nuntius</td>
<td>ninth, nōnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>midland, mediterraneus</td>
<td>no (—not any), nullus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mile, mille passus; miles, milia passuum</td>
<td>Nones, Nōnae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind, animus</td>
<td>north, septentrionēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minister, minister</td>
<td>northern, septentrionālis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note book, commentarii</td>
<td>not, nōn; not only, nōn sōlum; not any longer, nōn iam; not yet, nōndum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing, nihil</td>
<td>now, nunc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nowadays, hodie</td>
<td>nowhere, nusquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number, numeros</td>
<td>oblivion, obliviō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ocean, oceanus</td>
<td>October, Octobēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>officer, praefectus</td>
<td>often, saepe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on, in, with Abl.</td>
<td>on account of, propter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once, quondam</td>
<td>one, unus, una, unum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only, tantum or sōlum</td>
<td>onto, in, with Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order, imperāre</td>
<td>open space, area, i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origin, origō</td>
<td>order, imperāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other, alius, alia, aliud</td>
<td>Outlander, peregrinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ought : see ‘behoves’ our, nostis, nost-er-a,-um</td>
<td>over, super, with Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of, ex or ē</td>
<td>overrun, percurrere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oyster, ostrea</td>
<td>page, pagina, i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panic, terror</td>
<td>pay attention, operam dare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part, pars</td>
<td>peace, pax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pavement, pavimentum</td>
<td>people, a, populus; —persons, hominēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay attention, operam dare</td>
<td>perhaps, fortasse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picts, Picti</td>
<td>picture, tabula, i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>picture, tabula, i</td>
<td>pit, puteus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pity, misericordia</td>
<td>place, locus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place, to, colocāre</td>
<td>plan, consilium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluck, virtus</td>
<td>poet, poēta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
port, portus
praetor, praetor
praise, laudāre
prefect, praefectus
prepare, parāre
prevent, prohibēre
provide, praebēre
province, provincia
purpose, consilium
put to death, morti
dare

queen, regina

rank, ordō
read, lectitāre or legō
(after § 34)
ready, parātus
real, vērus
rebellion, rebellēō
recall, revocāre
receive, accipere
red, ruber, rubr-a,-um
reign, regnum
reign, to, regnāre
rejoice, gaudēre
remain, manēre
remains, reliquiae
remote, remotūs
republic, républica
resolve, constituere
reverse, incommodum
Rhine, Rhēnus
ride, equitāre
right, dexter
Roman, Rōmānus
Rome, Rōma
round, circum

say, dīcere; or inquam,
inquis, inquit, in-
quimus, inquit
school, lūdus litterārius
schoolmaster, magister
schoolmistress, magistra
Scots, Scōtī
Scottish, Scōticus
sea, mare
second, secundus
see, see to it, vidēre;
sell, vēnumdare
send, mittēre
send out, émittēre
September, September
serve (as a soldier),
militāre
set up, colocāre
seventh, septimus
seventieth, septuāgēsi-
mus
seventy-eighth, duodē-
octōgēsimus
shape, forma, 1
shell, concha, 1
shilling, dēnārius
ship, nāvis
show, monstrāre or
praestāre
side, latus (later-), 3
siege, obsidiō
signal, signum
signify, significāre
Silchester, Callēva
silence, silentium
sing, cantāre
sit down, sedēre
situated, situs; to be
—, iacēre
six, sex
six hundred, sescentī
sixteenth, sextus deci-
mus
sixth, sextus
sixtieth, sexāgēsimus
slaughter, trucidātiō
slaughter, to, truci-
dāre; slaughtered,
trucidātus
slave, servus
slavery, servitūs
sleep, somnus
smaller, minor, minus
so, tam
so great, tantus
soil, solum
soldier, miles
some, nōnnulli (of, ex)
someday, aīquandō
sometimes, interdum or
nōnumquam
son, filius
song, canus
soon, mōx
sorry; see ‘vex’
southern, meridiānus
Spaniard, Hispanus
speak, dīcere
spear, hastā, 1
special, praecipuus
square (adj.), quadrātus
stand, stāre
standard, signum
station, stātiō
stature, stātūra, 1
storm, to, expugnāre
strange, mirus
strengthen, firmāre
stretch, pertinēre
studies, studia
subdue, débellāre
successfully, prosperē
suddenly, subītō
surname, cognōmen
surrender, dēdere
surround, circumdāre
swim, natāre

take, capere
take by storm, expug-
nāre
take oneself back, sé
recipere
teach, docēre
tell, narrāre, or dicere
(after § 32)
temple, templum
ten, decem
tennis, lūdus trigōnālis
tenth, decimus
tessellated, tessellātus
than, quam
that, quod (but generally Acc. with Inf.)
then, tum
there, ibi
thing, rēs
think, cogitāre
third, tertius
thirtieth, tricēsimus
thirty, trīgintā
this, hic, haec, hoc
thousand (a), mille; thousands, milia
thousandth, milēsimus
three, trēs, m., f.; trīa, n.
through, per
throw, iacere
thunder, tonitrus
thus, sic
time, tempus
to, ad
to-day, hodie
together, ūnā
toil, labor
tolerate, tolerāre
to-morrow, crās
too, nimis;—also, quoque
tower, turris
town, oppidum
transport, transportāre
tremble, tremēre
trench, fossa
tribe, nātīō or gens
true, vērūs
try, operam dare
tumble, cadere
tunic, tunica, i
turbulent, turbulentus
twelfth, duodecimus
twelve, duodecim
twentieth, victīsimus
twenty, vigintī
two, duō, duae, duo
uncle, patrūs
under, sub
unhappy, miser
unite, conciliāre
unless, nisi
until, dōnec
upon, in
urn, urna, i
use, ūsus
veldt, campī lātī
verse, versūs
very-good, optimūs
very-great, maximūs
vessel, nāvīgium
vestibule, vestibulum
veteran, veterānus
vexes (it), πιγετ
victor, victor
victory, victūria
voice, vox
Wales, Cambriā
walk, ambulāre
wall, mūrus
want, inopia
war, bellum
warlike, ferox (ferōc-), 3
water, aqua
wave, unda
well, puteus
well (Adv.), bene
west, occidens
western, occidentālis
what (in a question), quid; Plur. quae;
(not in a question), quod
what o’clock, quota hōra
when (in a question), quandō; (not in a question), cum
whence, unde
where, ubi
which, qui, quae, quod
while, dum
white, albus, a, um
who (in a question), quis; (not in a question), qui or quae
whole, tōtus
why, cūr
wife, uxor
win a victory over, victoriām reportāre
a (or ab)
window, fenestra
wing (of a building or army), cornū
with, cum (put after mē, tē, sē, nōbīs,
vōbīs)
within, intrā
without, sine
wolf, lupus
woman, fēmina
worship, adōrāre
wound, vulnerāre
write, scribere
write out, exscribere
writer, scripтор
year, annus
yellow, flāvus
yesterday, herī
yet (after ‘not’), -dum
Summary of Grammatical Rules
(In Alphabetical Order)

Agreement.

1. A verb agrees with its subject in Person and Number:—
   animo alacri lectito. § 1. 11.
   vita Agricolae me delectat. § 1. 10.

2. An adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number and Case:—
   reges Britannici vel reginae Britannicae in Britannia regnaverunt. § 3. 2.
   This rule applies not only to examples like the above, in which
   the adjective is called an Attribute of the noun, but also to ex-
   amples like the following, in which the adjective is said to be
   predicated of the noun:—
   vita Agricolae difficilis est et obscura. § 1. 10.
   Horatius incolas Britanniae feros nominat. § 4. 6.

3. A noun standing in apposition to another noun agrees with
   it in Case:—
   librum de vita Agricolae, ducis celebris, mihi dedit. § 1. 7.
   ad flumen Tamesam penetraverat. § 2. 5.
   ex insula Mona properavit. § 9. 4.

4. The relative pronoun qui, quae, quod stands in the Case in
   which it would stand if the subordinate clause were a separate
   sentence, and it agrees in Gender and Number with the noun or
   pronoun to which it refers:—
   necesse fuit Hadriano, qui princeps Romanorum fuit,
   magnum vallum aedificare, cuius reliquiae hodie spe-
   tantur. § 20. 7.

Cases without Prepositions.

Note the following uses of the Accusative without a preposition:—

(1) As the Object of a verb or infinitive:—
   vita Agricolae me delectat. § 1. 9.
   nos non pigebit hic sedere. § 22. 8.) Impersonal verbs.
   Angelos eos vocari oportet. § 28. 18.}
   necesse fuit Hadriano magnum vallum aedificare. § 20. 8.
SUMMARY OF RULES

(2) as the Subject of an infinitive:—
Tacitus eum victoriam reportavisse affirmat. § 2. 10.
se in loco iniquo esse viderunt. § 39. 19.

(3) denoting 'time how long':—
apud magistrum meum iam septem dies sum. § 31. 2.
abhinc annos duos ('two years ago,' § 25. 5).

(4) denoting 'how far' in space:—
ducenta milia passuum distat. § 42. 8.

(5) denoting 'how much':—
vita Agricolae multum me delectat. § 1. 7.

(6) denoting 'place whither' in names of Towns (—'to'):—
Caractacum Romam deportaverunt. § 5. 26.
cur non Rutupias Hodie ambulatis? § 18. 3.

Note the following uses of the Ablative without a preposition:—

(1) denoting separation (—'from') with certain verbs and adjectives:—
scholis liberi sumus. § 55. 18.

(2) denoting instrument, means or manner (—'with' or 'by'):—
Britannos velut indagine circumcederant. § 13. 16.
longo die fatigati eramus. § 29. 6.
animo alacri lectito. § 1. 11.

(3) denoting the measure of difference (—'by'):—
multo plures sunt. § 35. 6.

(4) denoting 'time when' (—'at' or 'in' or 'on'):—
eo tempore rex Britannorum erat. § 3. 15.
anno tertio et quadragesimo regnabat. § 5. 5.
haec nonis Novembribus scripsi. § 39. 22.

(5) denoting price (—'at'):—
gallinae denariis viginti constant. § 50. 19.

(6) denoting quality (—'of' or 'with'):—
Britanni viri animo fortis erant. § 2. 14.
pueros facie pulchra, oculis caeruleis vidit. § 28. 5.

In this last use alone (No. 6) the Ablative is adjectival; in all other uses it is adverbial.
The **Dative** (which is always used without a preposition in Latin) denotes 'to' or 'for':—

- filio suo nomen Britannico dedit. § 5. 13.
- toti insulae nomen est Britanniae. § 21. 7.
- libertas eis cara erat. § 4. 11.
- quid utilius erat toti orbi terrarum? § 15. 6.
- Batavis licet esse civibus Britannicis. § 56. 61.
- unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem. § 49. 10.
- novis rebus student. § 35. 17.

But in the following uses one of the Datives may be translated without 'to' or 'for':—

- ei Britannia non erat curae. § 2. 20.
- cui erat usui? ('of use' or 'useful,' § 23. 17.)
- tormenta navalia nostris auxilio fuerunt. § 39. 11.

So too the Dative with certain verbs:—

- imperio Romano praerant. § 3. 19.
- reipublicae nostrae prosit. § 48. 18.
- tributum Britannis imperaverat. § 2. 8.

The **Genitive** (which is always used without a preposition in Latin) denotes 'of':—

- vita Agricolae (§ 1. 9). Annales Taciti (§ 1. 15). rex
  Britannorum (§ 3. 5).
- nomen regis ('the name of the king,' § 3. 11).
  Britanni huius faciei sunt. § 28. 11.

But in the following uses the Genitive may be translated without 'of':—

- num quid novi vidisti? ('anything new,' § 31. 7.)
- ne quid detrimenti capiat ('any harm,' § 52. 9).
- nomen Germanorum ('the name Germans,' § 34. 19).

The **Locative** (which is always used without a preposition in Latin) denotes 'at':—

- Devae, Isae, Viroconii (§ 5. 22), Dubris (§ 27. 5).
- domi (§ 29. 6).

In Singulars of the 1st and 2nd declensions the Locative is the same in form as the Genitive; in Singulars of the 3rd declension and all plurals it is the same in form as the Ablative.
SUMMARY OF RULES

Gender of Nouns.

1. Nouns denoting persons are masculine if they denote male persons, feminine if they denote female persons. This rule is the same for all declensions:

   e.g. amita, Boadicea, fem.; nauta, agricola, Caligula, masc.
   mater, uxor, fem.; pater, frater, victor, masc.
   princeps, rex, custos, miles, Cicero, masc.

2. The gender of nouns not denoting persons may be mostly found by the following rules:

   (a) Those of the 1st declension are all feminine, e.g. vita.

   (b) Those of the 2nd declension in us or r are nearly all masculine, e.g. campus, liber (except names of trees, which are feminine, e.g. ulmus); those of the 2nd declension in um are all neuter, e.g. caelum.

   (c) Those of the 3rd declension which form the nominative singular by adding an s are mostly feminine, e.g. hiem-s, pax (= pac-s), aeta-s (= aetat-s), virtū-s (= virtūl-s); navi-s, clad-e-s: except masc. pes, sanguis, mons, pons; collis, fines (plur.), ignis, orbis, mensis, and a few others. Those of the 3rd declension which form the nominative singular without adding an s are mostly—feminine if the nom. sing. ends in io, do or go,
     e.g. regio, grandio (except ordo, m.), origo, indago, especially those in -tio, -tudo,
     e.g. mutatio, natio; multitudo, testudo:
   neuter if the nom. sing. ends in men, ūs,* ur, or e,
   e.g. nomen, genus, robur, mare:
   masculine in other cases,
   e.g. amor, calor; agger, aer, imber; sol; sermo; pulvis,* mos.*

   (d) Those of the 4th declension in us are nearly all masculine, e.g. exercitus (except domus, Idus, manus, fem.); those of the 4th declension in u are all neuter, e.g. cornu.

   (e) Those of the 5th declension are all feminine, e.g. facies
   (except dies, which is generally masculine, though sometimes feminine in the sense ‘time’: singular number).

* The final s in these cases is not an addition to the stem, but part of it: the stem ends in s, but this s is turned into r in the genitive and other cases. Note -ūs neuter, -ūs feminine (e.g. virtūs).
Gerund and Gerundive.

The Gerund is a noun, corresponding to an English noun in -ing (formed from a verb):—

unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem. § 49. 10;
and it takes the same case (or no case) as the verb from which it is formed:—

regem spectandi cupidi erant. § 6. 4.

The Gerundive is an adjective (formed from a verb), which, agreeing with a noun or pronoun, gives the same sense as the Gerund with the Accusative:—

proelii spectandi (—proelium spectandi) causa. § 9. 16.
coloniae defendendae (—coloniam defendendi) causa. § 36. 7.
de ea intranda cogitavit. § 2. 22.

Moods.

The Indicative mood expresses fact:—
Kalendae sunt hodie Septembres. § 1. 1.
multa de bello audimus. § 40. 2.

The Imperative mood expresses command or prayer:—
audite, pueri! § 40. 7.
unum foedus omnis esto nominis Britannici! § 49. 15.

The Subjunctive (or Injunctive) mood expresses desire, and may generally be translated by ‘may’ or ‘shall’ (or by ‘might’ or ‘should’ in the past imperfect tense):—

Deo sit gratia! § 51. 20.
Deus salvam praestet reginam! § 49. 29.
ne desperemus! § 49. 7.

The Subjunctive mood often stands in subordinate clauses:—

(a) introduced by ut, ‘that’:—
operam dant ut oppidum expugnent. § 50. 4.
ita facta est ut ad terram applicetur. § 50. 25.
tantus imber cadit ut sol obscuretur (‘is darkened’). § 50. 11.
operam dabat ut castra obsidione liberaret. § 54. 3.

(b) introduced by ne, ‘that . . . not’ or ‘lest’:—
videat ne quid detrimenti respublica capiat! § 52. 9.
hostem circumdedit ne evadere posset. § 53. 8.

(c) introduced by qui, quae, quod:—
Caledones emittit qui impetum in Batavos dent. § 51. 5.
diem constituunt quo impetum dent. § 50. 5.
fossas foderat in quibus sui tuti essent. § 53. 7.
SUMMARY OF RULES

Order of Words within the sentence or clause.

RULE 1.—Anything that goes with a Noun (excepting a preposition) is generally put after that Noun in Latin:

Kalendae Septembres—animo alacri—patruus meus—Britannia nostra antiqua—veterani illi Romani—vita Agricolae. (This is the usual place of the Genitive.)

Except Demonstrative, Interrogative and Numeral Adjectives (including those Adjectives of Quantity which mean 'all,' 'some,' 'many,' 'few,' 'great,' 'small'):


RULE 2.—Anything that goes with a Verb or an Adjective or an Adverb is generally put before that Verb, Adjective or Adverb in Latin:

mane lectito—in mari natamus—me delectat—non possum:
nonnullis in locis difficilis—victoria a Britannis reportata:
multo ante (§ 41. 1)—non revera—non saepe.

The Dative generally stands before the Accusative:

ludo trigonali operam damus.

libris duas horas cotidie do.

As a general rule finish off one clause before beginning another.

Passive Voice.

For the formation of the Passive Voice from the Active in the Present, Past Imperfect and Future tenses, see page 72; for the formation of the Perfect tenses, see page 81.

The person by whom something is done is expressed by a or ab with the Ablative:

ab aliis imperatoribus oppida expugnabantur. § 16. 9.

Note the passive construction with a vague subject:

pugnabitur—'it will be fought'—'a fight will be fought,'

§ 41. 16.

Prepositions.

Most prepositions take the Accusative in classical prose, but the following six (and a few others not used in this book) always take the Ablative:

a Caledonibus, ab hostibus cum Caractaco, mecum
pro patria sine mora
ē Britannia, ex Annalibus de Britannis, de ira

[TURN OVER.
and the following two take either the Ablative or the Accusative, according to the meaning:

*in* when it means ‘in’ or ‘on’ takes the Abl.
when it means ‘into’ or ‘onto’ takes the Accus.

*sub* when it means ‘under’ or ‘down in’ takes the Abl.
when it means ‘towards’ or ‘down into’ takes the Accus.

e.g. *in mari* natare; *in mare* pellere:

*sub signis Romanis* militare; *sub vesperum*.

**Pronouns and Adjectives connected with them.**

*Suus, sua, suum* (‘his own,’ ‘their own’) is an Adjective, and generally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence or clause (printed in black type):

Claudius filio *suoe* nomen Britannico dedit. § 5. 13.

Eius (‘his’) and *eorum, earum* (‘their’) are Genitive cases of the Pronoun *is, ea, id*, and generally refer to some person or thing mentioned in a previous sentence:

Claudius expeditionem contra Britannos paravit: consilium *eius* erat Britanniam debellare. § 5. 1–4.

Se, sui, sibi, se (‘himself,’ ‘themselves’) is a Pronoun, and generally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence or clause:

Caledones trans Clotam et Bodotriam *se* congregant. § 11. 16.
templum, ubi *veterani* se occultaverant, cremant. § 9. 3.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum is generally an Adjective like the English -self in ‘myself,’ ‘himself,’ ‘themselves’:

cupidi erant regem ipsum spectandi. § 6. 4.
torrenta in ipso tempore apportaverant. § 39. 10.

**Questions.**

Questions which can be answered by ‘yes’ or ‘no’ are introduced by *num* or *-ne*:

*num* vos viri minus fortes eritis? § 8. 21.

*Nonne* is simply the negative *non* with the *-ne* attached to it; the *-ne* turns the negative statement into a negative question.

Questions which cannot be answered by ‘yes’ or ‘no’ are introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives or adverbs (without any *num* or *-ne*):

*quis* hoc castellum delevit? § 24. 1.
*quo* tempore in Caledonium migraverunt? § 19. 15.
*cur* non Rutupias hodie ambulamus? § 18. 2.
*quando* in viam nos dabimus? § 18. 20.
ORA MARITIMA
A Latin Story for Beginners, with Grammar and Exercises.
By Professor E. A. Sonnenschein, D.Litt.
Cloth 8vo, price 2s. (Subject to Discount).

Now in use in the Manchester Grammar School and its Preparatory Schools.

RECENT OPINIONS.

"Ora Maritima does for Latin what the modern oral methods do for French and German, i.e. it makes the beginner realize that the language is really a vehicle of expression, whereby commonsense notions can be conveyed. From personal experience I can testify how a few weeks are sufficient to gain this all-important idea; and it is worth adding that in a school which I have recently inspected a small boy of eleven employed his leisure time in working through Ora Maritima to the end and then came to his master for the sequel, Pro Patria. There was no need to tell that boy that Latin is something more than a phalanx of declinable nouns and verbs."—Alfred Hughes, M.A., Organizing Professor of Education in the University of Birmingham.

"The books are admirable, and under the guidance of a skilful teacher their use in class is followed by excellent results."—Professor Michael E. Sadler, LL.D., Manchester.

"I have started my own small boys in Latin with Ora Maritima and Pro Patria, and am delighted with both books; they indicate a method which is attractive to the child without being superficial."—Sir Arthur Hort M.A., Harrow School.


"The most attractive introduction to Latin that has come under my notice, and I have seen most of them in the secondary schools which I inspect."—John Kerr, LL.D., late H.M. Chief Inspector of Schools and Training Colleges in Scotland.

"It makes a new departure in the teaching of Latin that ought to be productive of great good. I am in entire sympathy with its method."—A. E. Scooga, H.M. Chief Inspector in the West of Scotland.


"I have used Ora Maritima in actual teaching, and have found it both interesting and instructive to the pupil."—Professor J. P. Postgate, Litt.D.

"This is a charming book. We know no better epithet by which to describe such an introduction to the Latin tongue. . . . It is giving a strong recommendation to say, as we gladly do, that our author has given us the ideal book which he formerly described."—Secondary Education.

"We can conceive no more delightful book for the induction of youth into the paths of Latin."—The Monthly Register.

"An interesting experiment, ably carried out."—Journal of Education.

"It aims at teaching a little thoroughly, and it succeeds."—School World.

"An extremely simple and interesting book."—Literary World.
PRO PATRIA

Sequel to ORA MARITIMA, with Grammar and Exercises to the end of the Regular Accidence.

Cloth 8vo, price 2s. 6d. (SUBJECT TO DISCOUNT).

RECENT OPINIONS.

"I have had both Ora Maritima and Pro Patria prescribed for use in our earliest standards. They were acknowledged by the Committee which passed them to be unequalled for the interesting way in which they presented the subject. I think no praise is too high for them."—W. G. WEDDERSPOON, M.A., H.M. Inspector of European Schools and Training Colleges, Burma.

"Both books have been used here with great advantage to both teachers and taught."—R. HAYDON, M.A., County Secondary School, Helston.

"In a long experience I have found Pro Patria quite the best book which I have ever come across for arousing and sustaining the interest of small boys in their elementary stage of Latin translation."—The Rev. PHILIP CRICK, M.A., St. Ronan's, West Worthing.

"Professor Sonnenschein's books do not 'gild the pill.' They merely make the pill a healthy one."—The Week's Survey.

THE GREEK WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

A Greek Story for Beginners on the same lines as the above, with Exercises (covering the Regular Accidence), Vocabulary and Maps.

By CHARLES D. CHAMBERS, M.A.

Cloth 8vo, price 3s. (SUBJECT TO DISCOUNT).

In this book, as in the Latin volumes of this series, special attention has been devoted to correctness of idiom in the text.

OPINIONS.

"At once felicitous in design and able in execution, containing incidents of thrilling interest written in the grave Thucydidean style."—Journal of Education.

"Most ably planned and most successfully executed. It gives reality and interest to the early study of Greek as distinguished from the study of Greek grammar, furnishing attractive reading and cutting away the mass of grammatical detail not immediately necessary."—Educational Times.

"A most valuable school book. The narrative is bright and interesting. We welcome this book and strongly recommend it to all schoolmasters."—The Oxford Magazine.

IN PREPARATION.

A German Story for Beginners on the same lines

AM RHEIN

By C. WICHMANN, PH.D., Professor of German in the University of Sheffield.

LONDON: SWAN SONNENSCHEIN & CO., Limited.
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COO.